MATRICULATION LATIN

CAESAR

BELLUM GALLICUM

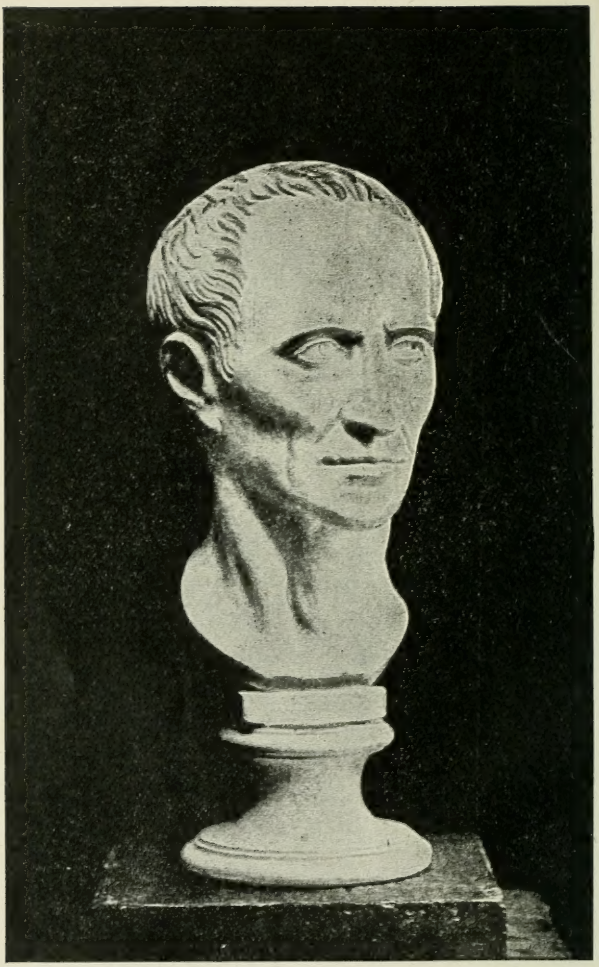
CARRUTHERS AND ROBERTSON

W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED
TORONTO

35

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

http://www.archive.org/details/caesarbellumgall00caes



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

(From the Roman Gallery, British Museum.)

MATRICULATION LATIN

CAESAR

BELLUM GALLICUM IV. 20–38, V. 1–23

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.
UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, M.A.
VICTORIA COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED
TORONTO

Copyright, Canada, 1917, by W. J. Gage & Company, Limited
Toronto

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction to Caesar	9
The Story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul	13
Caesar, De Bello Gallico, IV. 20—V. 23.	39
Notes on Caesar, De Bello Gallico, IV. 20—V. 23	67
Index of Points of Syntax and Accidence	94
Vocabulary	101
Test Passages for Translation at Sight	133

ILLUSTRATIONS

Caius Julius Caesar	*Frontispiece*
Roman Eagle	9
Sub Sarcinis	31
Roman Sword	38
Legionary Soldier	50
Armor and Weapons	61
Roman Soldiers on the March	66
Roman War Galleys	79
Testūdō *(from Trajan's Column)*	86
Transport Ship	94
Attack on a Walled City	132
Warship	141
Map of Gaul and Britain	6

BRITANNIA
CANTIUM
Tamesis Fl.
OCEANUS
CELTÆ SIVE GALLIA
GERMANIA
PANNONIA
ILLYRICUM
GALLIA CISALPINA
LIGURIA
ITALIA
ADRIATICUM MARE
MARE INTERNUM
HISPANIA
PROVINCIA ROMANA
AQUITANIA
ARMORICA
Lemonam
Agedincum
Lutetia
Bibracte
Genabum
Ligeris Fl.
Matrona Fl.
Sequana Fl.
Rhodanus Fl.
Arar
Genua
Massilia
Narbo
Tolosa
Padus Fl.
Danubius Fl.
Iberus Fl.
Garumna Fl.
ROMA
Eng. Miles

INTRODUCTION.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

Rise to Eminence.

Caius Julius Caesar was born at Rome on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. (or, as Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest patrician families of that city. Although of aristocratic birth, he espoused the cause of the popular party, and after barely escaping with his life on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82 B.C., he withdrew from active politics for several years. By 70 B.C., however, he had become a favorite of the people, and one of its most influential leaders. He rose rapidly through the various grades of office, being made in succession quaestor, aedile, pontifex maximus (a life-office), praetor, and finally consul in 59 B.C.

First Triumvirate.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles ; Caesar, the leader of the popular party ; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. On Caesar's suggestion they formed a coalition (the so-called First Triumvirate), the result of which was to place the practical supremacy of the state in the hands of these three men. The powerful influence of this coalition secured for him,

after his consulship, the administration for five years of the three provinces, Illyricum and Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul.* In 55 B.C., by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, this command was extended for another period of five years.

Conquest of Gaul and Expeditions to Britain.

From 58 to 51 B.C. Caesar was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. In the first three campaigns he made himself master of that country from the Province and the Pyrenees to the Rhine and the Ocean. In the fourth year (55 B.C.), after driving back across the Rhine certain invading German tribes, Caesar late in the summer undertook a reconnoitring expedition to Britain. He did not venture inland, and returned in a few weeks, but "he had learned where and how to land, and had noted the British method of fighting; above all he had accustomed his men to the sight of the sea and the painted barbarians." Caesar was not satisfied with this expedition, and in the next summer (54 B.C.), in spite of growing disaffection in Gaul, set sail for Britain with a much larger force, as if for a serious invasion. But though he subdued all the south-eastern districts, the Britons fought obstinately, and he had to withdraw at the end of the summer without being able to make any permanent impression upon this distant country, which was not again visited by a Roman army for nearly a century. The remaining three years (53 to 51 B.C.) were spent in completing the subjugation of Gaul, and especially in crushing the insurrections that from time to time broke out. Among the results of Caesar's conquest of Gaul were, first, that the boundaries of the Roman empire were now extended to the English Channel and the Rhine, and secondly, that the Roman language and civilization became so firmly implanted in Gaul that, even after nearly two thousand years, the language of that country (the French) is a modified Latin, and its laws and institutions show everywhere the in-

* For the various senses in which the word *Gaul* is used, see the Vocabulary under *Gallia*.

fluence of Rome. A more immediate result also was to furnish Caesar with an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman world had never before seen.

Civil War and Death.

After the conquest of Gaul, civil war arose between Caesar and Pompey, now his sole remaining rival, Crassus having fallen in battle in the East. By the overthrow of the Pompeian party Caesar became practically supreme ruler of the Roman world. He showed unexpected clemency to his former opponents, and began a brilliant career as administrator and reformer. But the Roman aristocracy, alarmed at his great power and popularity and their own loss of prestige, formed a conspiracy to remove him, being actuated in some cases by jealousy, in others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom; and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., "the foremost man of all this world" fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, at the base of Pompey's statue. Saddest of all, one of his many wounds was dealt by the hand of his intimate friend Brutus.

Personal Appearance.

We are told that in personal appearance Caesar was noble and commanding. He was tall of stature and of slender build, his complexion was pale, his nose prominent and decidedly "Roman," his eyes were black, keen and full of expression. In later life he had a tendency to baldness. His constitution was naturally delicate, and he was subject to attacks of epilepsy, but by constant exercise and temperate living he managed to acquire vigorous health, so that he could endure the most prolonged toil and most arduous exertions.

Versatile Genius.

The genius of Caesar was many-sided, and he excelled in everything he undertook. Not only was he one of the greatest generals of all time, but he was pre-eminent as a law-giver, a jurist and a statesman. Moreover, he has left behind him a reputation as an orator, a poet, a mathematician, an architect and engineer, while as an historian he will ever rank with the highest.

Extant Works.

Caesar was the author of numerous literary works, on many different subjects, but of these all that have come down to us are his *Commentarii De Bello Gallico* (from which the selections contained in this book are taken), and his *Commentarii De Bello Civili* (in three books), a history of the war between himself and Pompey. The Commentaries* of Caesar are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns. It is uncertain whether the work was written as the war went on, and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war. Each book of the Commentaries on the Gallic War contains the account of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Caesar's death by Aulus Hirtius, one of his lieutenants.

Literary Style.

The *Commentarii*, by universal consent, are written in the purest Latin, in a style marked by great simplicity and conciseness, and, in spite of its condensation, by singular ease and elegance. The best judges among Caesar's contemporaries praise his literary style for its purity of diction, and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, has this to say of the Commentaries: "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable; for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments." In the choice of words also Caesar is pure and classical, in accordance with the advice quoted from him by the Roman grammarian Gellius, "to shun an uncommon or out-of-the-way word as a ship would a rock."

---

* *Commentarii*, meaning *sketches, jottings*, is used as the title of a book on any subject, but especially an historical one, which is only sketched down or written without careful revision.

THE STORY OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL.

THE FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

Caesar, hearing of a threatened emigration of the Helvetian nation, hastens from Rome to Transalpine Gaul to prevent a movement so dangerous to the Roman Province.

1. Gallia est omnis[1] dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Gallī, quī ipsōrum[2] linguā Celtae appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, quī ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. Sed undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex parte est flūmen Rhēnus altissimus et lātissimus; alterā[3] ex parte mōns Jūra altissimus; tertiā ex parte flūmen Rhodanus nostram prōvinciam[4] ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs dē causīs Helvētiī nōn lātē vagārī poterant, nec facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre. Itaque, cum essent hominēs bellandī cupidī, angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur. Hīs rēbus adductī, oppida sua omnia vīcōsque incendere et dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre cōnstituērunt et optimam partem tōtius Galliae occupāre.

---

[1] Translate **omnis** by *as a whole*, in opposition to the narrower sense in which Caesar proceeds to speak of the **Gallī**.

[2] Translate by *their own* (in opposition to that of the Romans).

[3] Translate here by *a second*.

[4] Since 118 B.C. the southern part of France had been a Roman province (hence the modern name *Provence*). See the map of Gaul.

2. Itineribus omnīnō duōbus domō[1] exīre poterant; quōrum ūnum erat per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Caesar, cui prōvincia Gallia eō annō dēcrēta erat, audivit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Statim ab urbe profīcīscitur et in Galliam pervenit. Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; sed Caesar negat sē posse iter[2] ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Relinquēbātur ūna[3] per Sēquanōs via. Mox Caesarī renūntiātur Helvetiōs per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā nostrā absunt. Intellegēbat perīculōsum prōvinciae fore[4], sī hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimicī, prōvinciae fīnitimī essent[5]. Ob eās causās in Ītaliam contendit; duās ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs ex hibernīs ēdūcit; cum his quīnque legiōnibus in Galliam per Alpēs īre contendit.

Caesar surprises the Helvetians at the river Arar, and soon after, near Bibracte, inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder. The survivors are sent back to the homes they had abandoned.

3. Helvētiī jam per fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Itaque nē omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōnsūmerentur, Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad Helvētiōs pervēnit[6]. Trēs jam partēs Helvētiōrum flūmen Ararim trānsierant; reliquōs aggressus, māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās cōnsequī posset[7], pontem facit, atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Tum per[8] multōs diēs Caesar Helvētiōs īnsequitur, novissimumque agmen lacessit.

---

[1] See 618. [References are to the High School Latin Book.]

[2] Translate by *passage* or *right of passing.*

[3] Translate **ūna via** by *only the way.*

[4] **Fore = futūrum esse,** the future infinitive of **sum.**

[5] Translate by *should be* (or *were to be*). **Sī** with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may represent future conditions put in indirect discourse (687. *b*, and 688).

[6] Translate by *came up with.*

[7] For the use of secondary sequence with the historical present see 524. i.

[8] Translate by *throughout* or *for.*

4. Tandem ut reī frūmentāriae prōspiceret, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum et cōpiōsissimum īre contendit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs esse et discēdere ā sē exīstimābant. Itaque, itinere conversō, nostrōs īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciemque īnstruit. Helvētiī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proelium commīsit. Diū atque ācriter pūgnāvērunt. Sed cum diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, Helvētiī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Caesar Helvētiōs in fīnēs suōs, unde profectī erant, revertī jussit, et oppida vīcōsque restituere. Helvētiōrum trecenta et sexāgintā octō mīlia domō exierant; vix centum et decem mīlia domum[1] rediērunt.

The leading men of several Gallic tribes ask Caesar's assistance against Ariovistus, a German king, who had recently gained a footing in central Gaul. Caesar at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain.

5. Hōc bellō cōnfectō, tōtius ferē Galliae prīncipēs ad Caesarem convēnērunt atque petiērunt ut sibi auxilium ferret contrā Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, quī multa mīlia suōrum in Galliam trādūxisset optimumque agrum occupāvisset atque Gallōs ex fīnibus pelleret. Dēmōnstrant Ariovistum Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcisse et nunc crūdēliter imperāre atque obsidēs[2] nōbilissimōrum līberōs poscere; neque posse ējus imperium diūtius sustinērī. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque sē Galliam ab Ariovistī injūriā dēfēnsūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā prīncipēs dīmīsit. Simul Germānōs cōnsuēscere[3] in Galliam trānsīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum esse vidēbat, nē, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent. Itaque cōnstituit ad

---

[1] See 618.

[2] Translate by *as hostages;* for the case see 570.

[3] See the second illustrative sentence in 124.

Ariovistum lēgātōs mittere quī ab eō postulārent ut aliquem locum colloquiō[1] dīceret.

6. Quod[2] cum nōllet Ariovistus facere, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs mittit quī postulārent prīmum nē amplius Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde ut obsidēs Gallīs redderet nēve bellum iīs īnferret. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit sē Gallōs vīcisse atque jūre bellī ūtī cōnstituisse; sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque Gallīs injūriā[3] bellum illātūrum sī imperiō suō pārērent[4]; atque sī Caesar vellet sēcum congredī, intellectūrum quanta esset virtūs invictōrum Germānōrum.

7. Eōdem tempore Caesar certior factus est Germānōs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs Aeduōrum populārī, et māgnam multitūdinem Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur. Quibus[5] rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus, mātūrāre cōnstituit nē nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē conjungerent. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. In eō oppidō omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat facultās, idque nātūrā locī ēgregiē mūniēbātur. Hūc Caesar contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Deceived by false reports, the Roman soldiers are at first reluctant to advance, but Caesar calms their fears. On drawing near the Germans, Caesar has an interview with Ariovistus which the enemy's treachery renders fruitless.

8. Dum paucōs diēs ibi reī frūmentāriae causā morātur, mīlitēs falsīs rūmōribus māgnopere perturbāti sunt. Nam Gallī ac mercā-

[1] Translate the dative by *for*.

[2] To emphasize the connection with the preceding words, Latin often uses **quī** for **hīc** or **is**, placing it even before a conjunction. Here **quod** (literally *which thing*) is the object of **facere**; translate by *this* (667).

[3] Translate by *wrongfully* (596. iii).

[4] For **pārērent** and **vellet** compare footnote 5, page 14.

[5] Compare footnote 2 above, and translate as if it were **hīs**.

tōrēs Germānōs ingentī māgnitūdine[1] esse corporum, incrēdibilīque virtūte praedicābant. Caesar cum animadvertisset mīlitēs propter timōrem castra movēre ac sīgna contrā hostēs ferre nōlle, convocātō conciliō, dēmōnstrat Germānōs saepe ab Helvētiīs superātōs esse, quī tamen parēs esse exercituī Rōmānō nōn potuissent. Tum affīrmāvit sē proximā nocte quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, atque sī praetereā nēmō sequerētur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est[2], atque quārtā vigiliā, ut[3] dīxerat, profectus est cum omnī exercitū. Septimō diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

9. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit quī dīcerent Ariovistum, cum Caesar propius accessisset, colloquī cum eō jam velle: simul postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret, sed ut uterque cum equitātū venīret; verērī[4] sē nē per īnsidiās[5] ab eō circumvenīrētur. Plānitiēs erat māgna inter castra Ariovistī et Caesaris. Eō uterque cum equitātū ad colloquium venit, atque cum paucīs equitibus in mediam plānitiem prōgreditur. Reliquī equitēs mediocrī intervāllō[6] cōnstitērunt.

10. Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis ostendit quanta a sē senātūque beneficia Ariovistus accēpisset; simul docēbat Aeduōs diū sociōs populī Rōmānī fuisse. Postulāvit deinde eadem quae[7] lēgātī. Ariovistus respondit sē rogātum esse ā Gallīs ut Rhēnum trānsīret; nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum posteā intulisse; atque inīquum esse exercitum Rōmānum[8] in suōs fīnēs venīre. Postulāvit

---

[1] Translate **māgnitūdō corporum** by *stature*.

[2] Translate *was aroused*.

[3] **Ut**, in the sense of *as*, takes the indicative.

[4] The infinitive is in indirect discourse, the verb of *saying* being easily understood. For **nē**=*lest* or *that* after verbs of *fearing* see 629.

[5] Translate by *treacherously*.

[6] The ablative, as well as the accusative, may be used to express distance (598. i). Translate here by *at*.

[7] Translate by *made the same demands as*.

[8] See footnote 3, page 15.

igitur ut Caesar dēcēderet et liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trāderet. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Arioviстī propius accēdere, et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conjicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit, suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent, nē pulsī hostēs dīcere possent sē in colloquiō per īnsidiās circumventōs. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, multō mājus studium pūgnandī exercituī injectum est[1].

After several delays, Caesar comes to a decisive engagement with Arioristus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.

11. Post paucōs diēs Arioristus, castrīs mōtīs, praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus[2] ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō[3] ut frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Tum diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūxit. Arioristus autem, etsī dīmicandī potestās nōn deerat, hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit[4], et equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum ubi Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab īīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse[5], tertiam castra mūnīre jussit. Tum cōpiās Arioristus mīsit quae nostrōs mūnītiōne[6] prohibērent. Caesar tamen, ut anteā cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra mājōra redūxit.

---

[1] Translate **injiciō** and the dative by *inspire* (or *arouse*) *in* (577).

[2] For the ablative expressing distance see footnote 6, page 17.

[3] Translate by *with this design*, explained by the following clause.

[4] Translate by *kept in camp.*

[5] Translate by *to remain under arms.*

[6] Translate by *from fortifying.*

12. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā mājōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit[1]. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellexit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Posterō diē praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, atque triplicī īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās ēdūxērunt, omnemque aciem rēdīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficīscentēs mīlitēs flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

13. Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fēcērunt, itaque[2] hostēs celeriter prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs conjiciendī nōn darētur. Rejectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pūgnant. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant[3]. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus, quī equitātuī praeerat, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī salūtem repperērunt; in[4] hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus, eā profūgit. Reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

14. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus

---

[1] Translate by *gave an opportunity.*

[2] **Itaque,** here two words, **ita** + **que.**

[3] Translate the imperfect by *kept pressing.*

[4] Translate by *among.*

annī postulābat, in hiberna in[1] Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. Hībernis Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam profectus est.

THE SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

Learning that the tribes of the Belgae are combining against the Romans, Caesar advances into their territory and encamps on the bank of the river Axona.

15. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur[2], litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre. Conjūrandī hae erant causae: primum verēbantur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad Belgās exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre in Galliā cōnsuēscere[3] nōlēbant; nōnnūllī etiam ex potentiōribus, quī rēgna occupāre cupiēbant, molestē ferēbant quod minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō[4] cōnsequī possent. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte[5], in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret[6], Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pabulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Imperat Gallis quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant utī[7] ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet, diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

---

[1] Translate by *among;* the phrase modifies a verb of motion (618. vii).

[2] The imperfect denotes repeated action, *kept coming in;* so **fiēbat, was repeatedly informed.**

[3] Translate by *that an army should become accustomed* (517. *b*).

[4] Translate by *under our rule.*

[5] An ablative absolute; translate by *at the beginning of summer.*

[6] For the relative clause of purpose see 388.

[7] Distinguish **utī** = **ut** and **ūtī** the infinitive of **ūtor.**

16. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opīniōne[1] vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex[2] Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē neque cum Belgis reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāsse[3], parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta[4] facere; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs conjunxisse. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent[5], sic reperiēbat[6]: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque[7] antīquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse.

17. Dē numerō eōrum Rēmī dicebant quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit[8] sē cōgnōvisse. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valere[9]; hōs pollicitōs esse sexāgintā mīlia armātōrum, tōtiusque bellī imperium[10] sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre; oppida habēre numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur[11] longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs vīgintī quīnque mīlia, Menapiōs septem mīlia, Caletōs decem mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduātucōs decem et novem mīlia.

18. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus[12]

---

[1] Literally *than all expectation;* translate by *than any one had expected.*

[2] To be taken closely with **proximī** and translated by *of*

[3] A contracted form for **conjūrāvisse.**

[4] Translate by *his bidding.*

[5] Translate by *what their strength was.* For *quid* see 571. i.

[6] Translate by *he obtained this information.*

[7] **Rhēnum** depends on **trāns** in **trāductōs** (569. i).

[8] For the tense see 687. *b.* ii.

[9] Translate **plūrimum valēre** by *were the strongest;* the infinitive, like those which follow, depends on **cōgnōvisse.**

[10] Translate by *the supreme command.*

[11] Translate by *are considered;* **ferī** is the predicate nominative.

[12] Translate by *addressing them with kindly words.*

omnem senātum ad sē convenīre, prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī jussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Tum postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque jam longē abesse ab iīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus cōgnōvit, flūmen[1] Axonam, quod est in extrēmis Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titurium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit: castra pedum[2] duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum[2] mūnīrī jubet.

After an unsuccessful attack on Bibrax, the Belgae advance against Caesar. They are, however, defeated with great slaughter at the river Axona, and at once disband.

19. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est[3]. Sed cum fīnem oppūgnandī nōx fēcisset[4], Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et gratiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī lēgāti[5] dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse[6]. Eō mediā nocte Caesar sagittāriōs et funditorēs subsidiō oppidānīs[7] mittit; quōrum adventū, hostēs, paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcis aedificiīsque, quōs adīre potuerant, incēnsīs ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt.

---

[1] Notice the double accusative with **trādūcere** (569. i).

[2] Referring to the height and width respectively.

[3] For the use of the impersonal passive see 556. Translate by *they held out* or *the defence was maintained* (704. *c*).

[4] Translate **fīnem fēcisset** by *put an end* (*to*).

[5] Translate by *as ambassadors*, referring to those mentioned in § 16 above.

[6] **Nisi . . . posse** is indirect discourse, depending on the idea of *saying* implied in **nūntium mittit.**

[7] For the double dative see 431.

20. Caesar duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās[1] īnstrūxērunt. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent[2], hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret[3], ut impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur[4]. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt[3], Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent[2], castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titurius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent[5], agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

21. Caesar certior factus ab Titurīō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae[6] Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquī audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum repulsī sunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et de flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse[7] intellexērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent[8], ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī sunt nūllō[9]

---

[1] Translate by *led out and* (550. ii; 542. i. *c*).

[2] See the second illustrative sentence in 672.

[3] Translate **initium faciō** by *take the first step* (*in*), or *set the example*.

[4] See 556. Translate by *a cavalry engagement was going on*.

[5] For the tense see footnote 5, page 14.

[6] Translate by *light armed*, literally *of light equipment*.

[7] From **fallō**. **Ipsōs**, in contrast with the Romans.

[8] Translate by *should lead* (687. *b*); the antecedent of **quōrum** is **eōs**.

[9] Translate **nūllō . . . imperiō** by *without any . . . control*.

certō ōrdine neque imperiō, sīc ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

22. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum[1] equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē[2] ab explōrātōribus omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, mīsit. Hīs Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī jussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, sub occāsumque sōlis sē in castra, ut erat imperātum[3], recēpērunt.

Caesar advances into the Belgian country, receiving the submission of various tribes, and at last comes to the Nervii, the bravest of all the Belgae, who offer resistance.

23. Postrīdiē ējus diēī[4] Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent[5], in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et māgnō itinere cōnfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab[6] dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus[7] expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās ad oppidum agere, aggerem jacere, turrēs cōnstituere[8] quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Tum Gallī māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs armīsque omni-

---

[1] Referring to the infantry alone.

[2] Translate by *on the fact being established.*

[3] Translate by *according to instructions* (556; 704. *c*).

[4] Translate by *next day;* literally *on the morrow of that day.*

[5] See 650. *b*, with the illustrative sentence.

[6] Translate by *empty* or *destitute of.*

[7] See 305 and 546. *b*. Translate by *although.*

[8] Translate by *erect.* **Quaeque** is two words. **Audierant** = **audī verant**, *had heard of.*

bus ex oppidō trāditīs in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit[1] exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

24. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs mājōrēs nātū[2] ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in ējus fidem ac potestātem venīre[3] neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre[4] pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt. Caesar, quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

25. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent[5] patriamque virtūtem prōjēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius[6] mīlia passuum decem abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque[7] per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum conjēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

---

[1] Translate by *received the surrender of the Suessiones.*

[2] Translate by *the older men* or *the elders* (414). **Vōce** means *the tones of their voices*, for they could not speak Latin.

[3] Translate by *put themselves under his protection*, etc.

[4] Translate by *according to* (415. *b*); so **cōnsuētūdine suā**, page 26.

[5] See 665 and translate by *for surrendering.*

[6] Translate by *more than* (593. ii).

[7] **Quīque** has the force of **cōsque quī**. **Quō** is an adverb = **ad quem**, with antecedent **locum**; translate by *a place to which.*

The Nervii plan to surprise the Roman army. The design in part fails, but the Romans are for a time in great jeopardy, the utmost confusion prevailing, because of the suddenness and fury of the enemy's onset.

26. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Sed quidam ex dēditiciīs Belgīs quī ūnā cum Caesare iter faciēbant, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt[1] inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī[2], cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs[3] adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut[4] reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum[5] nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō[6] aequāliter dēclīvis ad flumen Sabim, quod suprā nōminābimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbatur adversus huic, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset[7]. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō[8] sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

27. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs[9]; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac[10] Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostī appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta collocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē

---

[1] For **dēmōnstrāvērunt**. Translate **singulās** (727. i) by *the several* or *every two*.

[2] Translate by *and that there was no difficulty* (586. iii).

[3] Translate by *while still burdened with the packs*. (See cut on page 31.)

[4] Translate **futūrum (esse) ut** by *the result would be that* (529. iv).

[5] Omit in translation (666. *c*).

[6] Translate by *from the top;* but for **ab superiōre parte** see 618. viii.

[7] Translate by *one could not see* (556).

[8] Translate by *in hiding*. For **pedum** see 586. viii.

[9] See 596. iii.

[10] Translate by *was different from what* (662. iii; 509. *c*, ii).

cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae[1] vēnerant, castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iis, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte adversō colle[2] ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

28. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda[3]: vexillum[4] prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus[5] duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum (nam superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, sibi praescrībere poterant), et quod ab opere lēgātōs Caesar discēdere, nisi[6] mūnītīs castrīs, vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil jam[7] Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs[8] mīlitēs dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs cohortātus, utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus[8] occurrit.

---

[1] See 705. *c*. In the next sentence translate by *the head of the baggage-train* (586. vi. *b*).

[2] Translate by *up the hill*, literally *by way of the hill facing them* (596. ii. *a*).

[3] See 612; understand **erat** or **erant** throughout the sentence.

[4] The **vexillum** indicated an impending battle; the **tuba** gave the signal to fall in; the final signal was to begin the battle.

[5] Translate by *these difficulties were relieved by two circumstances* (431); these were, first, **scientia atque ūsus**, and second, **quod . . . vetuerat**. For **quod**, *the fact that*, see 640. vii.

[6] See 550. iv. fn.; translate freely by *until after*, etc.

[7] Translate by *no longer*. **Vidēbantur**, as often, means *seemed best*.

[8] Understand **eīs**, *them;* for the dative see 553.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia[1] accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit.

29. Legiōnis[2] nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, quī in sinistrā parte aciēī cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs Atrebatēs celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et redintegrātō proeliō hostēs in fugam conjēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae[3] duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine[4] ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars castra petere coepit.

30. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs[5] hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur[6]. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quī auxiliī causā ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās esse, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs[7] nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

---

[1] Such as crests and distinguishing badges. For the tense of **dēfuerit** see 529. ii.

[2] To be repeated with **decimae**; translate freely by the plural.

[3] Translate by *apart from the rest*; and **ipsīs,** by *the very.*

[4] Translate by *in a very dense column.*

[5] Translate by *face to face.*

[6] For the number see 509. *c.* ii.

[7] Used transitively by Caesar in the ablative absolute; translate by *despairing of our success.*

Caesar by his presence and example at length rallies the legions, and after desperate fighting the Nervii are driven back with enormous loss, and submit to the Romans.

31. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, suōs urgērī et duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occīsōs esse sīgniferumque interfectum, sīgnum āmissum, reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerātōs aut occīsōs, et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset. Tum vērō scūtō mīlitī[1] dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, mīlitēsque cohortātus sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre jussit, quō[2] facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūjus adventū spē illātā mīlitibus[3] ac redintegrātō animō, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

32. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs conjungerent et sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō[4] in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus, et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam quī[5] vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent.

33. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis[6] tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent[7], proximī jacentibus

[1] Translate the dative by *from* (578. i).

[2] See 525. *b*.

[3] Translate the dative by *in*, or more freely as in 577. ii.

[4] Translate by *quickening their pace*. For **summō** see 175.

[5] Translate by *even such of our men as;* for **prōcubuissent** see 530. For the ablative **scūtīs** see 600.

[6] Translate by *when hope of safety was all but gone* (175).

[7] From **cadō**. Translate **jacentibus** by (*upon*) *the fallen* or *on their prostrate bodies* (544. *a;* 577).

īnsisterent, atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent, et ut[1] ex tumulō tēla in nostros conjicerent. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad internecionem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, mājōrēs nātū, quī ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs conjectī erant, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt. Quōs Caesar suīs[2] finibus atque oppidīs ūtī jussit, et finitimīs imperāvit, ut ab injūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci, retiring to a strongly fortified place, prepare to resist Caesar, but on realizing the efficiency of the Romans' siege artillery, make their submission.

34. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum[3] māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs[4] cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō passuum in circuitū quīndecim mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōnstituī[5] vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod[6] tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō[7] īnstruerētur.

35. Ubi vērō movērī[8] et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, nova atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt; sē nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs

---

[1] Translate by *as;* **conjicerent** depends on the first **ut**.
[2] Translate by *their own*, referring to **quōs** (656. i).
[3] Translate by *at this time* or *now*.
[4] Translate by *skirmishes*.
[5] See footnote 8, page 24; for the historical infinitives following see 604.
[6] See 640. Translate by *at the idea of*.
[7] Translate by *so far off*.
[8] Understand **turrim** as subject. Translate **speciē** by *spectacle*.

sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī[1] tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. His rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūjus bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent[2], mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās[3], imperāta factūrās pollicērentur.

Sub Sarcinīs.

THE THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

The tribes on the north-western coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty.

36. His rēbus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret[4], atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ējus bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas[5], Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

---

[1] Translate by *seeing that they* (665). [2] See 673.

[3] Feminine referring to the **nātiōnēs**, whom the envoys represented.

[4] Translate by *had every reason to think*.

[5] In the names of Gallic tribes, the Greek ending **-as** is often used instead of **-ēs** in the accusative plural of Declension III. (723. *d*).

37. Hūjus est cīvitātis[1] longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rērum reliquōs antecēdunt. Hī retinent Silium atque Velānium quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dēdissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī (ut[2] sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs reliquās cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā mājōribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum[3] servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat[4].

Caesar builds a fleet and makes other preparations for quelling the revolt, but because of the difficulties of the situation spends most of the summer without making much headway.

38. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius[5], nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligere, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit[6], ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū prō māgnitūdine periculi bellum parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent[7], prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc mājōre spē[8], quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera

---

[1] Translate by *this state possesses*, or *to this state belongs* (586. i).

[2] Translate by *for* (639). Translate **repentīna** by *unexpected*.

[3] Translate the genitive by *to* (586. ii).

[4] The idea of *saying* is implied in **lēgātiōnem mittunt**; translate by *telling him to restore* (686. *c;* 691).

[5] Translate by *too far* (593. iii). Translate **īnstituī** by *to be organized*.

[6] Translate by *as soon as the season permitted*.

[7] Equal to **quae ūsuī sunt nāvibus**. Translate **parāre** by *prepare for*.

[8] Translate by *all the more confidently;* for **hōc** (literally *by this*) see 598.

concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque[1] nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac perspiciēbant sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habērē nāvium neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse.

39. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt. Erant hae difficultātēs belli gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum conjūrātiō. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent[2], lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

40. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs duodecim et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī jubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs conjungantur. Decimum Brutum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre jusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum posset, in Venetōs[3] proficīscī jubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit. Erant ējusmodī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs[4] lingulīs prōmunturiīsque propter aestūs neque pedibus aditum habērent[5], neque nāvibus. Ita oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō māgnitūdine operis[6] forte superātī, suīs

---

[1] Equal to **et nōn**, the negative going only with **posse**.

[2] Translate by *before . . should* and compare footnote 5, page 24.

[3] Translate by *into the country of the Veneti*.

[4] Translate by *the points of* (586. vi, *b*). With **posita** understand **oppida**.

[5] Translate by *were accessible*.

[6] Translate by *of the siege-works*, and **superātī** by *being overmatched*.

fortūnīs[1] dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appulsō, sua dēportābant omnia, sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūrsus īīsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō[2] facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque[3] erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

At last a decisive naval battle is fought in which the Romans are completely victorious.

41. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellexit frūstrā tantum[4] labōrem sūmī, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae vīgintī nāvēs eōrum[5] parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae insertae affīxaeque longuriīs. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antennās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant[6], nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antennae concidēbant, ut hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.

42. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in[7] virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in[8] mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur. Disjectīs, ut dīximus, antennīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae[9] nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscen-

[1] Translate the dative by *of*, literally (*lose hope*) *for*. For the tense of **coeperant** and **dēportābant** see 561. Translate the three imperfects by *would* (678. *b*).

[2] See footnote 8, page 32.

[3] With **difficultās**. For the intervening ablatives, to be translated by *as*, see 548.

[4] Translate by *all this*. With **exspectandam** understand **esse** (698. *b*).

[5] Translate by *of theirs*. For **parātissimae**, *well* or *fully equipped*, see 261. *d*. Translate **armōrum** by *of appliances*. With **nostrīs** understand **nāvibus**.

[6] See 642. For the translation of the imperfect see footnote 1 above.

[7] Translate **erat positum in** by *depended on* (681. *b*).

[8] Translate by *over*.

[9] Translate by *two or three* or *by twos and threes*.

dere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac jam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat[1], tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō commovēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē fuit opportūna : nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum[2] tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est.

THE FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

Certain German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, hard pressed by their neighbors, cross into Gaul. Caesar, fearing an alliance of Germans and disaffected Gauls, advances to the Rhine, surprises and routs the invaders.

43. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, Usipetēs et item Tencterī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod[3] ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs[4] Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt ; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant et ad[5] utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant ; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre[6] prohibēbant.

44. Illī omnia[7] expertī cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē[8] in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī

---

[1] Translate by *was blowing*. For **quo** = **in quam** see footnote 7, page 25. Translate **exstitit** by *came* or *ensued*.

[2] Translate the genitive by *with* or *against* (586. ii).

[3] Translate by *that* (640. vii).

[4] Translate by *through many parts*. For the case see 618. v.

[5] Translate by *on*.

[6] See 518. i, and for the force of the imperfect, 678. *c*.

[7] Translate by *every device*, and **vī contendere** by *to force a passage*.

[8] See 514. iv.

viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā **nocte** equitātū[1] cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

45. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat[2], ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset ea quae fore[3] suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs quae invītārent eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, pollicērenturque omnia, quae postulāssent[4], ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Caesar, rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs[5], iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat.

46. Cum ab hoste octō mīlia passuum abesset, aciem triplicem īnstituī equitātumque agmen subsequī jussit, et celeriter itinere cōnfectō prius[6] ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī celeritāte adventūs nostrī perterritī, neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō[7], perturbantur, cōpiāsne[8] adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an

---

[1] Translate by *with*, literally *by means of*. Translate **itinere . . . cōnfectō** by *having covered . . . distance*.

[2] For the tense see 681. *b*; = **cōnsuēverat** (755. i).

[3] Translate by *would be the case*; = **futūra esse**. Translate **facta (esse)** by *had happened*.

[4] See footnote 5, page 14; = **postulāvissent** (755. i).

[5] Translate by *levied*. Omit **locīs** in translation, and see footnote 5, page 26.

[6] **Prius . . . quam** = **priusquam**, to be taken with **possent** (650. *b*, and fn.).

[7] Translate by *and having no time for holding*, etc.

[8] Translate **-ne . . . an . . . an** by *whether . . . or . . . or*. See 536 (last example).

fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quī[1] celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaque proelium commīsērunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

To prevent any further inroads, Caesar builds a bridge across the Rhine, and crossing into Germany, so overawes the German tribes that at his approach they flee into the forests of the interior.

47. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abjectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā[2] fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt[3]. Nostrī ad ūnum[4] omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre[5], cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trīgintā mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

48. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit jūstissima[6], quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus[7] eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās erat faciendī pontis propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen flūmen ponte jungere[8] dēcrēvit. Diēbus decem, quibus[9] māteria coepta erat comportārī,

---

[1] Translate by *those who.* Translate **suīs** below by *their families.*

[2] Translate by *further;* see footnote 7, page 28.

[3] From **pereō.** Translate **oppressī** by *overcome.*

[4] Translate by *to a man.*

[5] Translate by *after* (or *relieved from*) *all their dread of a formidable war.* Translate **cum** by *for.* For the case of **mīlium** see 586. viii.

[6] Translate by *the strongest.* For **quod** see footnote 3, page 35.

[7] Translate by *interests* or *security* (578).

[8] Translate by *to bridge the river.*

[9] Translate by *within ten days after*, literally *within the ten days within which* (621). For **coepta erat**, *had begun*, see 518. ii.

omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem[1] pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus[2] līberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī jubet. At Sugambrī fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās[3] abdiderant.

49. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī[4] ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent[5], līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent: hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse[6]. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rēbus iīs cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā[7] trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum injiceret[8], ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō decem et octō trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

---

[1] Translate by *end.*

[2] Translate by *on their asking for.*

[3] Translate by *in the solitude of the forests* (618. vi).

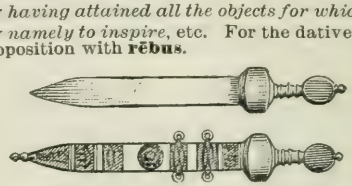
[4] Translate by *in case.* For the subjunctive see 672.

[5] The three subjunctive clauses depend on the idea of *telling* implied in **nūntiōs dīmīsisse**; translate by *instructing them to*, etc. (691).

[6] Co-ordinate with **dīmīsisse.**

[7] Translate by *having attained all the objects for which.*

[8] Translate by *namely to inspire*, etc. For the dative see 577. The **ut** clauses are in apposition with **rēbus.**



Roman Sword.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

Having decided on an expedition to Britain, Caesar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs 1
locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae
sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit,
quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde
subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad 2
bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore
arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset et genus hominum
perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset ; quae omnia
ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter 3
mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iīs ipsīs quicquam
praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt
contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique 4
mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque
quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum
bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī
essent ad mājōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs,
reperīre poterat.

Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.

1 **21.** Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret,
idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā
2 praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus
3 ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus copiīs
in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in
4 Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs
regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum
5 effēcerat classem jubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ējus
cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannos, ā com-
plūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī
polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Romānī
6 obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hor-
tātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum
7 remittit, et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus
superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūjus et virtūtem et
cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur,
cūjusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur,
8 mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortē-
turque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter
9 eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus
omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī
ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad
Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Caesar collects his fleet and makes his final arrangements.

1 **22.** Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnē-

runt quī sē dē superiōris temporis consiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūros pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse 2
arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātionēs Britanniae antepōnendās jūdicābat, māgnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eos in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter octogintā onerāriīs coāctīs contrāctīsque, 3
quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legionēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestorī lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdebant duodēvīginti 4
onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eo loco ab mīlibus passuum octo ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent: hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum 5
Q. Titūriō Sabīno et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eos pāgos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī non vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium 6
Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre jussit.

He reaches Britain, but has difficulty in getting a suitable landing-place.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan- 1
dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriorem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset admini- 2
strātum, ipse horā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās

hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstābilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conjicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūjus omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

Caesar manœuvres to dislodge the enemy, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās quārum 1
et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum ex-
pedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs
incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde
fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī
jussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium 2
figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum
permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem ret-
tulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē 3
propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legionis aquilam
ferēbat, contestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret:
"Dēsilīte," inquit, "mīlitēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus
prōdere: ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī
officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex 4
nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum 5
nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur,
ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvi- 6
bus cum cōnspexissent subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, 1
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque
sīgna subsequī poterant atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibus-
cumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere per-
turbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex 2
lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant,
incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs cir-

cumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla con-
4 jiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī jussit et, quōs laborantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia
5 submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons sue for peace.

1 **27.** Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūros quaeque imperāsset factūrōs pollicitī sunt.
2 Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprā dēmonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.
3 Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vin-
4 cula conjēcerant, tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā pāce ējus reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et
5 propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent,
6 īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus
7 locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

A portion of Caesar's ships crossing later is dispersed by a storm and driven back to the mainland.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā post diem quārtum, 1
quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī, dē
quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant,
ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appro- 2
pinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta
tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre
posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur,
aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis
occāsum, māgnō suī cum perīculō dējicerentur; quae tamen 3
ancorīs jactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō ad-
versā nocte in altum profectae continentem petiērunt.

The same storm does great damage to the vessels which had crossed with Caesar, and causes much alarm in the camp.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs 1
maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit,
nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās 2
nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat
quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et one-
rāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat,
neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī
dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent 3
fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvi-
gandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere,
tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs 4
erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant,
quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus
cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in
locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces.

1 **30.** Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs
2 Caesar legionēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in
3 Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus conjūrātione factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet.

1 **31.** At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.
2 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant
3 ūsuī ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons. Caesar goes to its relief.

1 **32.** Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā

ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod 2
erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum 3
paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conjicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs 4
partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō 5
adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs 1
partēs perequitant et tēla conjiciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim 2
ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem 3
peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et

per tēmōnem percurrere et in jugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few days in collecting larger forces.

1 **34.** Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ējus adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre re-
2 cēpērunt. Quō facto ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs
3 redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs,
4 quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuos complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostros in cas-
5 trīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrorum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur,
6 sī Romānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

When the Britons come against his camp, Caesar meets them and routs them with great slaughter.

1 **35.** Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā quōs Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāns-
2 portāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs constituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs
3 ferre non potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō

secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Having received the enemy's submission, Caesar returns to Gaul, the summer being now over.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē 1
pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante 2
imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctiī īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subjiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam 3
tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; 4
sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem, quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

A detachment of the Romans, after landing, is attacked by the Morini, but is rescued by Caesar.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter 1
trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem 2
hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque 3
amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā 4
vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abjectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

After crushing this uprising Caesar arranges his winter camps.

1 **38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs
legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī
2 rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs
palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō superiōre
annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem La-
3 biēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī
in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum
agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod
Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad
4 Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum
hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā
5 obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs
ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū
dēcrēta est.

Legionary Soldier.

LIBER QUINTUS.

Caesar orders more vessels to be built; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.

1. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab 1
hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat,
lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam
plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque re-
ficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. 2
Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque paulō facit hu-
miliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus,
atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs
aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad
onera ac multitūdinem jūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō
lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās 3
omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem humilitās
multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, 4
ex Hispāniā apportārī jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae 5
citeriōris perāctīs in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs
fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat.
Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in 6
locum convenīre jubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs 7
ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō
factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus
ratiōnibus dē injūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum 8
Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī jubet;
nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōn-
strat. Īs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter 9
cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

Returning in the spring he orders the fleet and army to assemble for another expedition to Britain, then goes to the country of the Treveri, whose loyalty was suspected.

1 2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīs-
2 citur. Eō cum vēnisset, circuitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter sescentās ējus generis, cūjus suprā dēmonstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās vīgintī octō, invenit īnstrūctās, neque multum
3 abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Collaudātīs mīlitibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trājectum esse cōgnoverat, circiter mīlium passuum trīgintā ā continentī ; huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum
4 relīquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quattuor et equitibus octingentīs in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

Two rival chiefs of the Treveri appeal to Caesar.

1 3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut
2 suprā dēmonstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx ; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque
3 adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit ; sē suosque omnēs in officiō futūrōs, neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs
4 cōnfīrmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur, ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iīsque, quī

per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteāquam nōnnūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et familiāritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt, et dē suīs prīvātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre noluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque esse cīvitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitātisque fortūnās ējus fideī permissūrum.

Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix, while requiring the submission of Indutiomarus.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum ducentīs obsidibus venīre jussit. Hīs adductīs, in iīs fīliō propinquīsque ējus omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est, utī in officiō manēret: nihilō tamen sēcius prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit: quod cum meritō ējus ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ējus auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūjus tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem

4 perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indūtiomārus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et quī jam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

Coming to the seaport Caesar finds the fleet and army ready.

1 **5.** Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum
2 legionibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit sexāgintā nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rējectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īn-
3 strūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus totīus Galliae convenit numero mīlium quattuor, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitāti-
4 bus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verē-bātur.

Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, causes trouble.

1 **6.** Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quo ante ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs constituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis
2 cōgnoverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātos ad Caesarem mittere audēbant.
3 Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur; partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timē-
4 ret; partim quod religionibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī

adēmptā prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū ter- 5
ritāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, jūsjūrandum 6
poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Caesar delays his departure in order to check disaffection. Dumnorix flees, but is overtaken and slain.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā, Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduae 1
dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod 2
longius ējus āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter 3
vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ējus cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem 4
mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere in nāvēs jubet. At omnium 5
impedītīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē 6
nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit, retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, 7
interficī jubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille enim 8

revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse
9 cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.

1 **8.** Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret, consiliumque prō tempore et prō
2 rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum non tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit.
3 Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum
4 superiōre aestāte cognoverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum
5 adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est
6 vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships he advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idoneō captō, 1 ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictīs et equitibus trecentīs, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancoram relinquēbat; et praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū 2 prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter duodecim hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī, equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen 3 prōgressī, ex locō superiōre nostros prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās 4 abdidērunt locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā jam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs 5 erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī propūgnābant nostrōsque 6 intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legionis 7 septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adjectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī 8 vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītionī castrorum tempus relinquī volēbat.

As troops are setting out in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

10. Postrīdiē ējus diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque 1 in expedītionem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum jam extrēmī essent 2 in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī

nūntiārent superiōre nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope
omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in lītore ējectās esse, quod neque
ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātō-
3 rēsque vim tempestātis patī possent ; itaque ex eō concursū
nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Caesar returns, arranges for the repairing of these losses, and again sets out against the enemy, now under Cassivellaunus.

1 **11.** Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legionēs equitātumque
revocārī atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs
2 revertitur ; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cōgnō-
verat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter quadrāgintā
nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidēren-
3 tur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī
4 aliōs arcessī jubet ; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās
posset, iīs legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat.
5 Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen com-
modissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum
6 castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne conjungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs
decem cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labō-
7 rem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque
ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus
8 relīquit : ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eō cum
vēnisset, mājōrēs jam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britan-
nōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī bellique administrandī
commūnī cōnsilio permissā Cassivellaunō, cūjus fīnēs ā
maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tame-
9 sis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum octogintā. Huic superiōre
tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella inter-
cesserant : sed nostro adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī
bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

A description of the people, products and climate of Britain.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs 1
in īnsulā ipsī memoriā proditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab 2
iīs, quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt
(quī omnēs ferē iīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus
ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi remān-
sērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta 3
multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia,
pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur [aut aere] aut nummō 4
aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō
nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs 5
regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ējus exigua est cōpia;
aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūjusque generis, ut in
Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gal- 6
līnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen
alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra
quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

The geography of Britain.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūjus ūnum latus est contrā 1
Galliam. Hūjus lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,
quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem
sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc pertinet circiter
mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam 2
atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō
minor, ut aestimātur, quam Britannia; sed parī spatiō
trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc 3
mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs
praetereā minorēs subjectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē qui-
bus īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub

4 brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus
reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse
5 quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūjus est longitūdō
lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, septingentōrum mīlium.
6 Tertium est contrā septentrionēs; cuī partī nūlla est objecta
terra, sed ējus angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam
spectat. Hōc mīlia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem
7 esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs
centum mīlium passuum.

The manners and customs of the Britons.

1 **14.** Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium
incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā
2 Gallicā differunt consuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta
nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt
vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod
caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in
3 pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō, atque omnī parte
4 corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs
habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs, et māximē
5 frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed, sī quī
sunt ex his nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō prīmum virgō
quaeque dēducta est.

The Romans are surprised while building a camp, but drive off the enemy.

1 **15.** Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum
equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī
omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās
2 collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius
3 īnsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō

spatiō imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ējēcērunt, impetūque in eos factō, quī erant in statione prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā 4 Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē constitissent, novo genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. 5 Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

Armor and Weapons.

The disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting with the Britons.

1 **16.** Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium
ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter
gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent
neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad
2 hūjus generis hostem ; equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō
proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērum-
que cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvis-
sent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent, et pedibus disparī proeliō con-
3 tenderent. Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et
4 īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdē-
bat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque inter-
vāllīs proeliārentur stationēsque dispositās habērent, atque
aliōs alii deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatī-
gātīs succēderent.

The Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.

1 **17.** Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōn-
stitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs
2 equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar
pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum
C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus
ad pābulātorēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legionibusque
3 non absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō rep-
pulērunt, neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō
cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs
4 hostēs ēgērunt ; māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque
suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī

facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique 5
convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus
umquam summīs nobīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar forces a passage across the Thames.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim 1
in fīnēs Cāssivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō
omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō 2
cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam
māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat 3
acūtīs sudibus praefixīs mūnīta, ējusdemque generis sub
aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs 4
ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim
legiōnēs subsequī jussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū 5
mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs
impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent,
rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Caesar's line of march.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dē- 1
positā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs amplioribus cōpiīs, mīlibus
circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servā-
bat, paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac
silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus
nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs
in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster līberius 2
praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ējēcerat, omnibus
viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, et māgnō
cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum iīs cōnflīgēbat atque

3 hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes, a powerful British tribe, submit to Caesar.

1 **20.** Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiō-num cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūjus pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad
2 Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque
3 imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī prae-
4 sit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Many other tribes now submit, and Caesar captures the 'town' of Cassivellaunus.

1 **21.** Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum in-jūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī,
2 Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cognoscit nōn longē ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum
3 pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōn-
4 suērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus: locum reperit

ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum ; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī 5 mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris re- 6 pertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

A sudden attack on the camp by the sea is repulsed, and Cassivellaunus sues for peace.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur Cassivellaunus ad 1 Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Iī cum ad castra vēnissent, 2 nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cas- 3 sivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in 4 continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit ; interdīcit atque 5 imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar returns to the mainland.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs 1 invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māg- 2 num numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit.
3 Ac sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis,
4 quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsīderārētur; at ex iīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō sexāgintā, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae
5 ferē omnēs rējicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius
6 mīlitēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

Roman Soldiers on the March.

NOTES ON BOOK IV, CHAPS. 20-38.

N.B.—The references are to the sections of the High School Latin Book. The following abbreviations are used: cf. = compare; ch., chap. = chapter; fn. = footnote; lit. = literally; sc. = supply, or understand; trans. = translate or translation

CHAP. 20.

1. **exigua**: emphatic from position. **parte reliqua**: abl. absolute (548); equivalent to an *etsi* clause (543); trans. 'although only a small part . . . and although . . . yet Caesar made an effort.' **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **ad septentriones vergit**: 'lies towards the north.' **bellis**: for case see 159. **hostibus subministrata**: sc. *esse* (514. iii); 'had been furnished to the enemy.'

2. **si**: 'even if.' **gerendum**: see 611. **deficeret**: 'did not enable him,' lit.? (670; 687. *b*). **usui**: see 431. **fore**: see 327; the subject is contained in the clauses *si modo . . . cognovisset*. **adisset**: for *adiisset* (755. i. *b*). For the pluperfect subjunctive used in indirect discourse, secondary sequence, for the future perfect of direct discourse, see 687. *b*; trans. 'approached,' the literal translation being 'should have approached,' not 'had already approached.' **genus hominum**: 'the character of the inhabitants.' **quae omnia**: 'all of which,' lit.? (586. vi. *a*). **fere**: with *omnia*.

3. **neque . . . quisquam**: 'no one,' lit.? **illo**: adverb. **iis ipsis**: *i.e.*, *mercatoribus*. **Gallias**: 'Gaul.' The plural has reference to the triple division of Gaul with which Caesar begins his Commentaries on the Gallic War: *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres* (page 13).

4. **vocatis**: trans. by 'although' (542. i. *a*). **quanta esset . . . portus**: depending on *reperire poterat* (362). **belli**: 'in war' (586. ii). **quibus . . . uterentur**: 'what manners and customs they had' (356). **qui essent . . . portus**: 'what harbors suitable for . . . existed.' **majorum**: 'larger than usual' (593. iii); the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of those regions. **poterat**: for the imperfect see 678. *b*.

CHAP. 21.

1. **Ad haec cognoscenda**: with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum* (611). **priusquam faceret**: 'before making' (650. *b*). **idoneum**: 'a suitable person.' **arbitratus**: see 540. fn.

2. **Huic**: for the case see 553. **ut exploratis . . . revertatur**: for the subjunctive see 424; trans. 'to find out . . . and return' (542. i. *c*). **quam primum**: see 668. i.

3. **in**: trans. 'into the country of.' **inde . . . trajectus**: the straits of Dover are meant.

4. **quam . . . classem**: 'the fleet which' (666. *b*. i). **ad**: 'for.' **Veneticum bellum**: the year before (56 B.C.) the tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combined to recover their liberty, but were defeated by the Romans in a sea-fight.

5. **qui polliceantur**: trans. 'to promise'; see 388. **dare**: irregularly used for *se daturos esse* (512; 514. ix). **imperio**: see 553.

6. **Quibus, eos**: both referring to *legati* (550. ii. and fn.); trans. *quibus* by 'these' (667). **liberaliter pollicitus**: '(and) having made liberal promises,' lit? (704. *c*). **permanerent**: see 424. **domum**: see 618.

7. **una**: adv. **Commium**: with *mittit*. **superatis**: referring to 'That day he overcame the Nervii' (57 B.C.), with which people the Atrebates were allied (see pages 24-30). **constituerat**: 'had made.' **ibi**: *i.e.*, among the Atrebates. **his**: of Gaul, not Britain. **magni habebatur**: 'was valued highly'; for *magni* see 587.

8. **quas . . . civitates**: 'all the states he can,' lit. 'the states which he can'; sc. *adire*. **possit**: see 408. **adeat**: with the same force as *ut adeat*, 'to visit'; so *hortetur* and *nuntiet* (686. *c* and fn.). **ut fidem sequantur**: 'to embrace the alliance,' or (with Holmes) 'to trust to the good faith,' depending on *hortetur*.

9. **regionibus**: 'country.' **quantum**, etc.: 'so far as one could who,' etc.; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one who'; for *tantum facultatis quantum* (668. ii), 'according to such measure of opportunity as could be given.' The whole clause has the value of an adverbial acc. modifying the abl. absol. **auderet**: for mood see 530. **quaeque**: = *et quae*. **perspexisset**: see 534. i.

CHAP. 22.

1. **parandarum**: see 611. **moratur**: for the tense see 273. *c*. **de . . . consilio**: 'for their previous conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Caesar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti. **quod**, etc.: 'in that, being uncivilized,' etc. **consuetudinis**: see 429. *c*. This 'custom' was, as the Roman poet Virgil expressed it:

> 'The ways of peace to proclaim,
> Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame.'

populo: trans. by 'on' (578). **fecissent**: for mood see 640. **-que**: joins *excusarent* and *pollicerentur*. **ea quae**: 'whatever.' **imperasset**: see on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

2. **satis**: 'quite.' **post tergum**: 'behind him.' **has tantularum**, etc.: 'attention to such trivial matters,' lit. ? (586. ii). **anteponendas**: sc. *esse*. **Britanniae**: dat. (577); meaning the expedition against Britain. **iis imperat**: 'requires (*or* demands) of them' (553. ii). **Quibus**: the hostages; trans. as in ch. 21, 6. **eos**: the Morini. **in fidem recepit**: 'received under his protection.'

3. **coactis contractisque**: the former of impressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot**: 'the number which,' lit. 'as many as'; *quot* is subject of *esse*. **quod**, etc.: 'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit. ? (586. iii). This clause furnishes the object of *distribuit*.

4. **Huc accedebant**: 'besides these there were,' lit. 'to this were added.' **ab**: used adverbially = 'away'; or trans. 'at a distance of.' **milibus**: see 598. **passuum**: see 586. iii. **tenebantur quo minus**, etc.: 'were detained . . . and prevented from being able.' *Quo minus*, lit. 'whereby the less,' may also be written as one word. **possent**: see 631.

5. **ducendum**: for the gerundive with *do*, here agreeing with *exercitum*, see 613.

CHAP. 23.

1. **ad navigandum**: see 444. **tertia vigilia**: the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal hours (*horae*), the length of each varying with the season. **solvit**: sc. *nares*. **ulteriorem**: 'farther,' *i.e.*, up the coast. The exact localities are unknown.

2. **A quibus . . . administratum**: 'as these carried out their instructions,' lit. ? For the impersonal passive see 556. For *tardius*, 'too slowly,' see 593. iii. The result was that Caesar reached Britain *cum primis* (not *cum omnibus*) *navibus*. **expositas copias armatas**: 'the armed forces displayed.'

3. **Cujus**: 'this' (667). **haec**: 'as follows'; more fully explained by *atque . . . continebatur*. **ita anguste**, etc.: 'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), to be translated 'steep,' or 'close to the sea.'] **uti**: another form for *ut*; distinguish from *ūti*. **in**: trans. 'to.' **posset**: for the mood see 371.

4. **dum convenirent**: depending on *exspectavit*; 'till . . . should assemble,' or more freely 'for . . . to assemble' (649. *b*). **ad**: 'until.'

5. **quae fieri vellet**: 'what he wished done' (517). **monuit . . . administrarentur**: 'instructed them to do everything (promptly) at the signal and at the (right) moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this (latter) was subject to rapid and uncertain changes.' **ut ratio . . . ut res**: *ut* = 'as,' and is repeated with each subject. **postularent**: for mood see 665 and 670. **ut quae**: i.e., *maritimae res*; 'inasmuch as these'; *ut* might be omitted, and merely heightens the causal force of *quae* and the subjunctive (665). **monuit administrarentur**: with the same force as *monuit ut administrarentur*; cf. *adeat*, ch. 21, 8 (686. *c* and fn.). **ad nutum et ad tempus**: the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem*.

6. **uno**: 'one and the same.' **dato, sublatis**: trans. by principal clauses (542. i. *c*). **litore**: abl. absolute; trans. by 'off.'

CHAP. 24.

1. **quo genere**: 'the sort of force that,' lit. 'which kind' (*i.e.*, of warriors), referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis* (666. *b*. ii). **consuerunt**: cf. 755. i. *a*. **copiis**: see 596. iii. **egredi**: 'from landing' (518. i). **prohibebant**: for tense see 678. *c*.

2. **has**: referring to what follows. **nisi . . . non**: 'only,' lit. ? **militibus autem . . . desiliendum erat**: 'while the soldiers had to leap down' (612. i); similarly *consistendum* and *pugnandum*. For the dative see 354. **ignotis locis**: 'who were unacquainted with the ground'; lit. 'the ground (being) unknown'; abl. absolute (548). So *impeditis manibus*. **oppressis**: dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. **cum illi**: 'whereas the enemy.' **ex arido**: modifying *conjicerent*. **omnibus . . . locis**: in contrast to *ignotis . . . manibus*, section 2; 'having all their limbs free and being perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit. ? **insuefactos**: 'who were trained (to this).' **conjicerent, incitarent**; an adversative force is combined with the temporal (563. *a*).

4. **generis**: see 589. **eadem . . . quo**: for agreement see 508. i; for *quo* = 'as' see 668. **consuerant**: see 755. i. *a*. **uti, utebantur**: 'display' or 'show.'

CHAP 25.

1. **Quod**: object of *animadvertit* (667. i). **naves**: subject of *removeri, incitari* and *constitui*. **quarum**: 'whose.' **inusitatior**: 'less familiar,' *i.e.*, than that of the *naves onerariae*. **et motus**, etc.; 'and (whose) movements were quicker for service,' *i.e.*, 'and which were more easily handled.' **ad**: 'on.' **apertum latus**: *i.e.*, the right side, unprotected by shields. **quae res**: 'a manœuvre which,' or 'this manœuvre,' lit. ? **usui**: as in ch. 20, 2.

2. **remorum motu**: the Britons used only sails with their large vessels. **paulum modo**: 'but only a little.'

3. **atque**; 'and now.' **cunctantibus**: trans. by 'while' (540, 542. ii). **qui aquilam ferebat**: 'the eagle-bearer.' For *qui* = *is qui* see 666. *a*. **ut . . . eveniret**: see 424. **ea res**: 'his (lit. that)

undertaking *or* attempt.' **legioni**: see 578. **inquit**: 'cried'; for position and use see 514. vi. **Desilite**: the imperative. **vultis**: from *volo*. **praestitero**: trans. freely by future; for the force of the future perfect see 682. *b*.

4. **voce magna**: 'in a loud voice' (596. iii).

5. **inter se**: 'one another,' lit.? (662. ii). **ne . . . admitteretur**: 'not to incur,' lit? (424). **dedecus**; *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle. **universi**: 'in a body' or 'all together'; section 6 shows that Caesar is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. **Hos item**, etc.: 'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also,' etc.; lit. 'when also from the nearest ships they saw these.' **hostibus**: see 553. **appropinquarunt**: see 755. i. *a*.

CHAP. 26.

1. **Pugnatum est**: see 556. **alius alia ex navi**: 'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' For this idiom see 662. i. **quibuscumque . . . occurrerat**: 'to whatever . . . they fell in with.' For the dat. see 577. For the tense see 681. *c*. So *conspexerant*, section 2, and *conspexerat*, section 4.

2. **vero**: 'while.' **ubi**: 'whenever.' **adoriebantur**: trans. by 'would' (678. *b*). So *circumsistebant* and *conjiciebant*. **plures**: nominative.

3. **in universos**: 'at the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

4. **item**: '(and) also.' **quos . . . his**: freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the clauses; or 'whenever . . . any . . . to them,' without transposing. **jussit, submittebat**: notice the change of tense; the perfect expresses a single command; for the imperfect see 678. *b*. **his**: see 578.

5. **simul**: = *simul atque*. **suis consecutis**: 'with their comrades following' or 'followed by their comrades' (550. i). **neque**: 'but . . . not.' **longius**: 'any distance' (593. iii). **ad pristinam**, etc.: 'to (complete) Caesar's usual good fortune,' lit.? For dat. see 582.

CHAP. 27.

1. **proelio**: trans. by 'in' (145). **de**: trans. 'to treat (*or* sue) for.' **daturos**: sc. *se* (514. x). **quaeque**: as in ch. 21, 9. **imperasset**: cf. ch. 22, 1.

2. **quem supra**, etc.: 'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc.; lit.? (514. vi). **demonstraveram a Caesare**: notice that Caesar the *writer* (first person) is always distinguished from Caesar the *commander* (third person). English usage would require the perfect tense here.

3. **Hunc, illi**: object and subject respectively of *comprehenderant*. **egressum**: modifying *hunc*; trans. 'on his landing' or 'when he landed.' **cum deferret**: 'although he was bearing' (563. *a*). **modo**: 'in the character of'; or freely, 'as' (596. iii). **tum**: trans. by 'now.'

4. **rei**: 'act.' **imprudentiam**: *i.e.*, their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. **ut ignosceretur**: 'that pardon be granted (them),' or 'to be pardoned' (424 and 557; see also 704. *c*).

5. **quod . . . intulissent**: see 640. **cum . . . missis . . . petissent**: 'although they had sent . . . and sought,' lit.? (563. *a*). **petissent**: see 755. i. *b*. **ignoscere**: sc. *se*: notice the tense (327). **imprudentiae**: for dat. see 553.

6. **illi**: see 653. vii. **arcessitam . . . daturos**: sc. *esse*; 'that they would send for . . . and give up,' lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *daturos*, not to *dixerunt* (540). **diebus**: see 621.

7. **suos**: subject of *remigrare*. **agros**: 'their lands.'

CHAP. 28.

1. **His rebus**: 'by this means,' lit.? **post diem . . . ventum**: 'three days after he came' = *die quarto postquam*, etc.; *post* (the adverb) coming before *die quarto* was felt to have the force of a preposition, and made to govern the acc. **quartum**: the Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. **est ventum**: see 556. **naves**: subject of *solverunt*, a rare use. **demonstratum est**: 'mention has been made.' (704. *c*.) **superiore**: in ch. 23, 1, called *ulteriorem*. **vento**: see 596. iii.

2. **viderentur**: 'were in sight.' **posset**: see 371. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur*. **inferiorem**: *i.e.*, towards the S.W. **propius occasum**: see 569. v. **sui**: 'to themselves' (586. ii); another reading is *suo*, with the same trans.

3. **quae tamen**, etc.: 'and as (*cum*) these had nevertheless (*i.e.*, in spite of the danger) cast anchor, and were filling,' etc.; or *tamen* may apply to the whole sentence, and be opposed to the words just preceding, 'however as these.' **necessario . . . profectae . . . petierunt**: 'they were forced to put out . . . and make for,' lit.? **adversa nocte**: 'in the face of the night,' lit. 'the night facing them' (548).

CHAP. 29.

1. **nocte**: that of Augŭst 30-31, 55 B.C., according to astronomical calculations. **esset**: 'there was' (371). **qui dies**: 'a time which.' (666. *b*. ii). **maritimos aestus maximos**: 'very high tides'; our spring-tides. **consuevit**: 'is wont' or trans. by 'usually.' **incognitum**: the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 25 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. **uno**: as in ch. 23, 6. **naves . . . complebat**: keep the Latin order and trans. by the passive voice. So *onerarias . . . afflictabat*. **quibus**: 'in (lit. with) which.' **transportandum . . . curaverat**: 'had had . . . brought over' (613). **ad**: 'at.' **neque ulla**: 'and no,' lit.? **administrandi, auxiliandi**: the former referring to those on board, the latter to those on shore. **administrandi**: sc. *naves*.

3. **fractis**: trans. both abl. absol. and *cum* by 'as.' **amissis**: trans. 'having lost' or 'through the loss of.' **magna**, etc.; 'great alarm inevitably (*or* as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.; lit.? **id quod**: 'a thing which' (666. *d*); *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*, and *quod* is subject of *accidere* (635). **exercitus**: for case see 586. ii.

4. **neque aliae**: trans. by 'no other.' **possent**: see 530. **omnibus constabat**: 'it was generally understood'; more lit. 'it was agreed among all'; for dat. see 579. *b*. **hiemari oportere**: 'that they must winter' (556 and 634). **in hiemem**: 'for the winter.'

CHAP. 30.

1. This sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz., after *collocuti*, *transportarerat* and *producere* (506); trans. as if the Latin read *collocuti sunt; intellegebant et cognoscebant; itaque duxerunt; nam confidebant.* **principes**: subject of *duxerunt*, section 2. **inter se**: see 662. ii. **Romanis deesse**: freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? **quae**: referring to *castrorum.* **hoc angustiora**: 'all the smaller' or 'more contracted for this reason.'

2. **optimum factu**: 'the best thing to do'; for the supine see 470. *b.* **duxerunt**: 'concluded.' **rebellione facta**: 'to renew hostilities and.' **prohibere, producere**: subjects of *esse.* **frumento**: see 437. *b;* so *reditu.* **rem**: 'the campaign.' **superatis**: trans. by 'if' (542. i. *a*); so *interclusis.* The tense is relative to *transiturum* not to *confidebant.* **confidebant**: see 640.

3. **rursus**: not 'a second time,' but referring to the return to their former attitude. **agris**: as in ch. 27, 7. **deducere**: 'to bring down,' *i.e.*, to the coast.

CHAP. 31.

1. **ex eventu navium**: 'from what had happened to his ships,' (586. ii). **ex eo, quod**: 'from the fact that' (640. vii). **fore**, etc.: 'suspected that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' **accidit**: for the mood see 670. i.

2. **ad**: 'for' or to 'meet.' **subsidia comparabat**: 'he set about making provision' (678. *c*). **quae . . . naves, earum**: = *earum navium quae*, 'of the ships which' (666. *b*. i). **quae**: 'whatever'; sc. *ea* as subject of *comportari.* **res**: 'purpose.' **erant**: for the mood see 670. i. **continenti**: see on Book V, ch. 8, i.

3. **cum . . . administraretur**: 'as the soldiers worked,' cf. ch. 23, 2. **studio**: see 596. iii. **amissis**: trans. by 'although.' **reliquis . . . effecit**: 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' or still more freely (with Holmes) 'he managed to have the rest made tolerably seaworthy,' lit. 'he brought it about (*or* managed) that the voyage could be made,' etc. **navigari**: see 556. **posset**: see 529. iii. **effecit**: notice the tense as compared with the imperfect used in section 2 (680. *b*).

CHAP. 32.

1. **geruntur**: see 647. **ex consuetudine**: 'as usual'; to be taken with *una*, not *missa*. **frumentatum**: the supine (470. *a*). **ad**: 'up to.' **interposita**: 'having arisen,' *i.e.*, between the time of the surrender and the present. **cum**: 'as' or 'for,' explaining the preceding words. **hominum**: 'of the people (or natives).' **ventitaret**: 'kept coming'; a frequentative verb (758. ii). **quam consuetudo ferret**: 'than usual,' 'than was customary,' lit. 'than custom brought' (670). **in ea . . . partem**: 'was visible in the direction in which'; for *partem* see 666. *c*.

2. **id, quod erat**: 'what was actually the case.' *Id* is explained by the appositive clause *aliquid . . . consilii*. **aliquid . . . consilii**: 'some new plan' (586. iii). **initum**: sc. *esse*. **in stationibus**: 'on guard'; the plural because of the four gates of a Roman camp. **ex**: 'of' (586. v). **in stationem succedere**: 'to take their place on guard'; the singular of the general idea of guarding. **reliquas**: *i.e.*, four of the ten cohorts in the legion. **armari**: 'to arm themselves' (656. iv).

3. **paulo longius**: 'some little distance' (593. iii). **conferta**: trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus*.

4. **una erat reliqua**: 'only one remained.'

5. **dispersos**: sc. *nostros*; trans. by a 'when' clause; so *occupatos*. **incertis ordinibus**; 'whose lines were in disorder,' giving the reason for *perturbaverant*; it was difficult to find the proper places in the cohorts. The pluperfects in sections 4 and 5 tell what had happened prior to Caesar's arrival in section 3.

CHAP. 33.

1. **hoc**: 'as follows.' **ex essedis pugnae**: 'of chariot fighting'; **per omnes partes**: 'in all directions.' **ipso terrore equitum**: 'by the very (*or* mere) terror caused by their horses'; for the gen. see 429. *c*. **ordines**: *i.e.*, of their opponents. **equitum**: *i.e.*, their own. Caesar had no cavalry with him. **insinuaverunt**: see 642.

2. **ita**: 'in such a way.' **illi**: *i.e.*, those who had dismounted to fight on foot. **premantur, habeant**: trans. by the pres. indic.,

and for the mood see 673 and 371 respectively, and also 476; or trans. by 'should' and 'would' respectively, and for the mood of *premantur* see 478. 2.

3. **tantum efficiunt**: 'become so expert,' lit.? **loco**: 'ground.' **per**: 'along.' **consuerint**; see 755. i. *a*, and for the mood 371.

CHAP. 34.

1. **quibus rebus**: abl. of means. **perturbatis nostris**: may be dative with *auxilium tulit* (578), or abl. absolute. **novitate**: trans. by 'because of' (595). **adventu**: see 159.

2. **quo facto**: 'in spite of this,' more lit., 'although this was done.' **ad**: 'for,' depending on *alienum*. **suo loco**: 'on his own ground' (618. v). **brevi . . . intermisso**: 'after a short interval,' lit.?

3. **haec**: referring to the whole incident. **occupatis**: trans. by 'while.' **qui erant reliqui**: 'those who remained,' *i.e.*, the Britons spoken of in ch. 32, 1, *pars . . . remaneret* (666. *a*). **discesserunt**: *i.e.*, from their homes to join their countrymen (see ch. 30, 3).

4. **secutae sunt**: 'there followed' (118). **continerent, prohiberent**: for the mood see 530.

5. **quanta** 'what an excellent' or 'how favorable.' **faciendae**: 'for obtaining' (611). **sui liberandi**: see 611. iv. **expulissent**: for the mood and tense cf. on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

CHAP. 35.

1. **idem . . . fore**: 'that the same thing would happen.' **ut . . . effugerent**: 'namely, that . . . would escape,' in apposition with *idem* (694). **si**: 'even if.' **essent pulsi**: for the mood and tense cf. *expulissent*, ch. 34, 5. **dictum est**: cf. on *demonstratum est*, ch. 28, 1.

2. **diutius**: 'any longer,' *i.e.*, than the beginning of the battle. (593. iii).

3. **secuti . . . occiderunt**; sc. *nostri*. **tanto spatio**: freely, 'as far,' lit. 'by way of (*i.e.*, over) as great a space' (596. ii. *a*). **quantum . . . efficere**: 'as their speed and endurance allowed,' *Cursus* = rate of running, *vires* = powers of endurance.

CHAP. 36.

2. **His numerum duplicavit**: 'from these he required double the number,' lit., 'for these he doubled,' etc. **die**: 'the time,' or 'the season'; *dies* is sometimes fem. in the sing., chiefly in the sense of a fixed date. **propinqua . . . navibus**; trans. by 'as' (548). **hiemi . . . subjiciendam**: 'they should risk sailing in stormy weather,' lit.?

3. **mediam noctem**: 'midnight' (175).

4. **quae**: 'the ships.' **ex . . . quae**: we should say 'two of the transports,' lit.? **quos reliqui**: 'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (crews reached)'; *reliqui*, masc., by sense construction (510, fn.). **infra**: *i.e.*, towards the S. W.

CHAP. 37.

1. **Quibus navibus**: the two just mentioned. **castra**: that of Sulpicius Rufus, ch. 22, 6. **proficiscens**: 'on setting out' (540). **primo**: adverb. **non ita magno**: 'with a not very large,' lit.? **si . . . nollent**: 'if they did not wish to be killed' (670); for *esse*, see 518. iv.

2. **ad clamorem**: 'in answer to the shouting.' **hominum**: as in ch. 32, 1: with *milia* (586. iii). **suis auxilio**: 'to aid his men' (431).

3. **amplius horis**: 'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (242), or the abl. of time within which (621. i), uninfluenced by *amplius* (593. ii). **paucis**: 'but a few.'

4. **Postea quam**: answering to *primo*, section 1; generally written as one word.

CHAP. 38.

2. **siccitates**: trans. by the singular; in Latin the plural of an abstract noun (here due to the plural *paludum*) is used to denote various instances of a quality or its existence in different objects. **quo . . . haberent**: 'had no place to which to retreat,' or 'had no place of retreat,' more lit. 'had not whither they could retreat'

(530). **quo . . . usi**: trans. immediately after *paludum*, to which *quo* refers. For the agreement of *quo* cf. 510. i. **perfugio**: 'as a place of refuge' (555. i). **fuerant usi**: see 683. *d*. **in potestatem pervenerunt**: 'fell into the hands,' lit. ?

3. **omnes**: nominative. **in silvas**: see 618. vi.

4. **in**: 'among' or 'in the country of.' **neglexerunt**: add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. **His rebus**: referring to the whole of the summer's campaign. **ex litteris Caesaris**: 'in consequence of Caesar's despatches.' **dierum**: see 383. **supplicatio**: 'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples of Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Caesar had written: "for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."

Roman War Galleys

NOTES ON BOOK V, CHAPS. 1-23.

CHAP. 1.

1. **consulibus**: see 548. **discedens ab**: 'on leaving.' **Italiam**: the province of Cisalpine Gaul (*Gallia Citerior*), in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. **ut**: 'as,' in which sense it takes the indic. **legionibus**: see 577. **quam plurimas possent**: sc. *aedificare*; 'as many as they could' (668. i). For the mood of *possent* see 408. **hieme**: 'during the winter' (621. i). **uti aedificandas curarent**: 'to have built' (613). For the tense of *curarent* see 524. i.

2. **Ad**: 'for.' **onerandi**: trans. by 'in.' **subductiones**: cf. on *siccitates*, IV, ch. 38, 2. **facit humiliores**: sc. *eas*. **quam quibus**: 'than those which'; sc. *eas* (242. *a*. i). **nostro mari**: the name Mediterranean was not then in use. **id eo magis**: 'all the more so'; with *id* sc. *facit* ('he does'), and cf. on *hoc*, IV, ch. 30, 1. **minus magnos**: 'smaller.' **fieri**: 'are caused.' **onera . . . transportandam**: for the agreement see 508. i. **reliquis maribus**: 'in other waters,' meaning the Mediterranean, the various parts of which were given separate names by the Romans.

3. **actuarias**: pred. adj.; *naves actuariae* were swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails. **fieri**: for the infin. pass. with *impero* see 518. v. **quam ad rem**: 'to which end.'

4. **Ea quae sunt**: 'what is.' **Hispania**: Spain was rich in iron and material for ropes.

5. **Ipse**: in contrast with the *legati* of section 1, who were left to carry out his orders. **conventibus**: the governor of a province was also its supreme judge. **Illyricum**: another of Caesar's three provinces. **finitimam**: *i.e.*, to the *Pirustae*. **audiebat**: 'he heard'; the tense implies that the news came more than once.

7. **nihil**: 'none,' lit. ? **publico consilio**: 'with the sanction of the community (*or* state)'; as opposed to the work of irresponsible

individuals. **demonstrant**: co-ordinate with *mittunt*, not with *doceant*. **omnibus rationibus**: 'in every way.' **de**: 'for.'

8. **ad**: 'by.' **diem**: for the gender see on IV, ch. 36, 2. **fecerint**: 'they do.' For the perf. subj. representing the fut. perf. indic. in primary sequence, see 687. *b*.

9. **ad diem**: 'at the (appointed) day.' **dat**: 'he appoints.' **aestiment**: 'assess.'

CHAP. 2.

2. **circuitis . . . invenit**; 'he visits . . . and finds.' **studio**: with *instructas*. **in summa inopia**: '(although) amidst,' or freely 'in spite of,' or 'although there was,' etc. **cujus**: sc. *generis naves;* trans. freely 'which,' as though it were *quod*, the object of *demonstravimus*. **longas**: sc. *naves*. **neque multum**, etc.: 'and that they are also ready to be launched'; lit. 'and that it is not far from this but that,' etc. (630. i. *d*). **diebus**: see 621.

3. **Collaudatis**: more emphatic than *laudatis*. (49, N. B.) **negotio**: see 577. **quid fieri velit**: cf. on IV, ch. 23, 5. **omnes**: sc. *naves*. **portum Itium**: the exact locality is unknown. **milium**: see 383. *b*; modifying *trajectum*. **huic rei**: 'for this purpose,' *i.e.*, for bringing the fleet safely to its appointed place. **satis militum**: 'an adequate force,' lit. ? (586. iii).

4. **concilia**: Caesar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. **veniebant, parebant**: trans. by 'would not' (678. *b*).

CHAP. 3.

1. **plurimum**: adverb. **equitatu**: see 414. **supra**: Book III speaks of 'the Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.' The last words of chap. 2 show why he here dwells on their position.

2. **duo**: 'two (rivals).' **inter se**: 'with each other' (662. ii).

3. **alter**: here 'the latter,' lit. 'the one.' **cognitum est**: see 556. **se . . . futuros**: with *confirmavit*. **in officio**: 'true to their allegiance,' lit. ? **populi**; objective gen. (586. ii); trans. by 'with,' not 'of.'

4. **cogere**: depending on *instituit*, and connected by (*iis*)*que* with *parare*. **per**: 'by reason of.' **in armis esse**: 'be under arms,' or 'bear arms.' **ingenti magnitudine**: see 383; modifying *quae* with the force of an appositive adj.; freely 'which is of vast extent and,' etc. **medios**: see 175.

5. **Cingetorigis**: cf. on *populi*, section 3. **de suis privatim rebus petere**: 'to make requests on their own behalf,' lit.? **privatim**: the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. **civitati**: see 578; in contrast with *suis privatim rebus*. **non possent**: 'they felt unable'; for the mood see 640. i. **ne**: 'lest' or 'that'; for the subjunctive see 629.

6. **sese noluisse**: sc. 'saying' or 'to say,' implied in *legatos mittit* (691); *sese* refers to the subject of *mittit*. **idcirco**: explained by *quo . . . laberetur*. **quo . . . contineret**: see 525. *b*. **ne . . . laberetur**: 'lest . . . should' (386). **discessu**: abl. of time, suggesting also the cause.

7. **permitteret**: see 688. **in castra**: see 618. vii. **suas, civitatis**: both modifying *fortunas*.

CHAP. 4.

1. **qua de causa**: 'why.' **instituto**: 'original,' lit.? **omnibus . . . comparatis**: modifying the preceding words.

2. **in**: 'among.' **filio**: in apposition with *his*. **evocaverat**: sc. *Caesar*. **consolatus**: sc. *est;* because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen.

3. **nihilo**: see 598. **principibus, hos**: the same persons; see 550. ii. fn. **quod**: conjunction. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' **merito . . . fieri**: 'that he was treating him according to his desert,' for *a se fieri* = *se facere*, see 556. **merito**: see 415. **magni interesse**: see 554. *b*. ii; the subject is the clause *auctoritatem . . . valere*. **cujus . . . perspexisset**: 'seeing that he had observed his,' etc.; or trans. *ejus cujus* 'of a man whose'; for the mood see 665. **suos**: referring to *ejus* (657. i). **tam**: omit in trans.

4. **factum**: noun. **suam . . . minui**: in apposition with *id factum;* 'that . . . should be lessened.' **qui fuisset**: 'whereas (*or*

while) he had been' (665). **inimico animo**: 'ill-disposed' (383). **hoc dolore**: 'at this grievance' (595); more lit. 'through indignation at this.'

CHAP. 5.

2. **factae erant, erant profectae**: for the mood see 670. i. **eodem**: adverb. **omnibus rebus**: 'in all respects,' lit. 'with all things.'

3. **numero**: modifying *milium;* for the abl. see 414. **milium**: modifying *equitatus* (383); trans. 'the cavalry, four thousand in number.'

4. **obsidum loco**: 'as hostages,' lit. ? (618. v). **cum abesset**: 'while he was absent,' or 'during his absence,' for the fut. ind. of the actual thought (687. *b*; 676. *b*).

CHAP. 6.

1. **ante . . . dictum est**: 'we have spoken before.' Book I tells how four years before Dumnorix had stirred up hostility to Caesar among the Aedui. Caesar had pardoned him, but had ever since carefully watched his conduct. **eum**: sc. *esse*. **animi**: 'pride' or 'ambition'; for the case see 383.

2. **Accedebat huc quod**: 'besides this' or 'in addition'; more lit. 'to this was added the fact that' (640. vii). **deferri**: notice the tense (327). **quod dictum**: 'a statement which.' **neque**: 'but yet . . . not.'

3. **factum**: sc. *esse*, or as in ch. 4, 4. **Ille**: 'Dumnorix.' **omnibus**: 'all manner of.' **petere contendit**: 'sought earnestly,' lit. ? **quod . . . timeret**: 'on the ground that he was unaccustomed . . . and dreaded'; for the mood see 640. **navigandi**: see 589. **diceret**: for the mood see 672. i.

4. **id**: the request to be left behind. **sibi**: 'him'; indirect object.

5. **territare**: 'he kept alarming'; historical infin. (604); for the form see 758. ii. **fieri, esse**: in trans. supply 'saying' from *territare* (691). **ut . . . spoliaretur, ut . . . necaret**: see 694 and fn. **nobilitate**: see 437. **quos**: trans. after its antecedent *hos* (504. *a*). **vereretur**: see 670. **ut . . . traductos necaret**: 'to take over . . . and murder' (542. i. *c*; 550. ii).

6. **reliquis**: *i.e.*, the other *principes* than himself. **interponere, poscere**: cf. on *territare*, section 5. **quod**: 'whatever.' **intellexissent**: for the mood and tense cf. on *adisset*, IV, ch. 20, 2. **ut . . . administrarent**: giving the contents of the oath (522. *c*). **communi consilio**: 'by concerted action,' or more freely 'unite in carrying out,' etc. **deferebantur**: not once only, hence imperf.

CHAP. 7.

1. **tantum dignitatis tribuebat**: 'had such respect,' lit? (586. iii). **coercendum**: sc. *esse*. **quibuscumque . . . posset**: 'by whatever means he could'; for the mood see 670.

2. **longius**: 'still farther,' *i.e.*, than at present. **prospiciendum**: sc. *esse statuebat* (556). **quid nocere**: 'to do any harm'; for the acc. see 571. i. **sibi**: *i.e.*, Caesar. **ne quid . . . posset**: see 525. *a*.

3. **commoratus**: 'while waiting,' or 'as he was waiting'; for the tense see 540. fn. **omnis**: omit in trans. **ut . . . contineret**: see 522. *c*: so *cognosceret*.

4. **milites**: the infantry, belonging to the Roman legions, as opposed to the cavalry, who were native auxiliaries.

5. **impeditis**: 'while . . . were occupied.' **insciente Caesare**: 'without Caesar's knowledge' (548). **domum**: 'for home' (618).

6. **omnibus rebus**: 'everything (else).' **retrahi**: cf. on *fieri*, ch. 1, 3.

7. **vim faciat**: 'offers violence' or 'makes resistance'; for fut. indic. of direct discourse (687. *b*). **se absente**: 'in his (*i.e.*, Caesar's) absence.' **qui . . . neglexisset**: 'seeing that he,' etc.; for the mood cf. on *perspexisset*, ch. 4, 3. **praesentis**: 'in his presence'; lit. '(of him) while present.' **imperium**: 'authority.'

8. **enim**: 'in fact.' Another reading is *autem*. **clamitans**: see 758. ii. **liberum, liberae civitatis**: both predicates of *se esse*; trans. 'a free man and a citizen of a free state' (174).

9. **erat imperatum**: see 557. **hominem**: 'the fellow.'

CHAP. 8.

1. **continente**: elsewhere in Caesar *continenti* with the regular abl. ending of an I-stem. **pro tempore et pro re**: 'as time and circumstances might suggest,' lit. 'in accordance with,' etc.

2. **pari quem**: 'the same as' (668). **ad**: 'about.' **provectus**, etc.: 'was carried forward . . . but as the wind fell . . . could not keep,' etc. **longius**: 'too far' (593. iii). **orta luce**: 'at sunrise,' lit.? (550. i). **sub sinistra**: 'on the left'; the current had carried the vessels out of the Channel into the North Sea. **relictam**: 'behind him.'

3. **qua**: 'where'; adv. See IV, ch. 23, 6. **egressum**: a noun.

4. **admodum laudanda**: 'deserving of great praise' or 'most praiseworthy'; (450. *b*). **vectoriis . . . navigiis**: 'with transport ships, and those, too, heavily laden.' **non intermisso**: 'without relaxing,' or trans. by principal clause co-ordinate with *adiaequarunt*, for which see 755. i. *a*.

5. **Accessum est navibus**: 'the ships reached,' lit.? (556); *navibus* is abl. of means. **neque hostis**: 'but no enemy.'

6. **cum**: 'although' (553. *a*). **quae cum annotinis**, etc.; 'of which, including those of the previous year . . . eight hundred were in sight'; for the nom. *quae* see 586. vi. *a*. **quisque**: probably confined to rich officers and Gallic nobles. **sui commodi**: 'for his own convenience'; a predicate possessive gen. (586. i). here expressing purpose. Some editions read *sui commodi causa*. **amplius octingentae**; for the case see 593. ii.

CHAP. 9.

1. **castris**: for the dat. see 404. **ad**: 'by' or 'near.' **qui . . . essent**: 'to protect the ships,' lit.? (431 and 388). **de tertia vigilia**: 'early in the third watch'; *de* suggests that a portion of the watch had passed. The third of the four night watches would begin at midnight. **eo minus**: cf. on *eo magis*, ch. 1, 2. **navibus**: see 578. **relinquebat**: notice the tense. **et**: omit in trans.; another reading is *ei*.

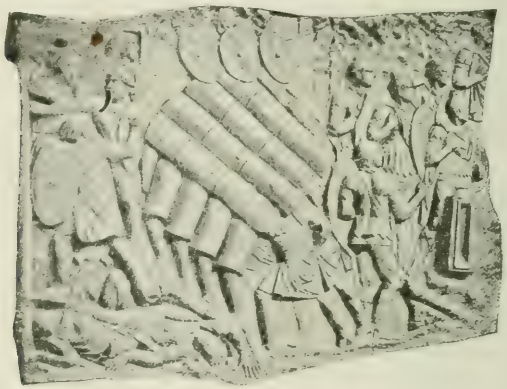
3. **equitatu**: see 596. iii. **ex loco superiore**: belonging to the whole clause, not to *prohibere*; the north bank was higher than the south. **nostros prohibere**: 'to check the advance of our men.'

4. **egregie munitum**: 'well protected.' **opere**: 'by art,' lit. 'by fortification'; explained by section 5. **ut videbantur**: 'as it seemed,' or 'apparently,' lit. ? (514. vii). **causa**: 'with a view to.'

6. **ingredi prohibebant**: cf. on IV, ch. 24, 1.

7. **testudine**: a *testudo* was formed by the soldiers holding their shields over their heads so that they overlapped and formed a continuous cover, which received its name from its resemblance to a 'tortoise shell.' **aggere**: this was to put them on a level with those defending the walls. **ad**: 'against' or 'close to.' **paucis**: as in IV, ch. 37, 3.

8. **eos**: i.e., *milites*, subject of *prosequi*. **fugientes**: object of *prosequi*; see 544. *a*. **longius**; cf. on ch. 8, 2, or on IV, ch. 26, 5. **munitioni**: see 404.



Testudo *(From Trajan's Column).*

CHAP. 10.

1. **postridie ejus diei mane**: 'on the very next morning,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day in the morning.' **in**: 'on,' lit. 'with a view to.' **expeditionem**: strictly, a rapid march of a flying column of *expediti* (ch. 2, 4).

2. **aliquantum itineris**: 'some distance,' or 'a considerable distance'; lit? (586. iii). **extremi**: 'only the last (*or* rearguard),' *i.e.*, of the troops sent out. **in litore**: another reading is *in*

litus (618. vi). **neque subsisterent**: 'would (*or* did) not hold'; for the mood see 670; for the tense see 678. *b*.

3. **eo concursu**: 'owing to the vessels thus colliding' or more lit. 'from the colliding thus resulting'; *eo* refers to what is implied in the preceding lines.

CHAP. 11

1. **revocari**: *i.e.*, from pursuing the enemy. **resistere**: here meaning 'to halt.' Another reading is *itinere desistere* (437).

2. **eadem fere quae**: 'much the same state of affairs as' (668). **sic**: 'to this extent,' or 'with this qualification,' here in a limiting sense, restricting the force of the previous words *eadem . . . perspicit*, and explained by the following *ut* clause (529. v). **amissis**, etc.: with concessive force; trans. by 'while.' **reliquae posse viderentur**: 'the rest, it seemed, could,' lit. ? (514. vii).

4. **scribit ut instituat**: see 526. ii. **quam plurimas posset**: cf. on ch. 1, i. **iis legionibus**: 'with the aid of,' etc. (596. i). **posset, sunt**: for the moods see 670. i. For the change of tense see 687. *b*. ii.

5. **multae**: for the agreement see 508. i. **operae ac laboris**: trans. by 'involving'; see 586. viii. **commodissimum**: 'the best plan.' **naves subduci**: see 124 or trans. by changing the voice.

6. **ne nocturnis**, etc.: freely 'without suspending the soldiers' work even at night,' lit. ? **ad**: lit. 'with respect to.'

7. **quas ante**: sc. *reliquerat*.

8. **summa imperii**, etc.: 'the chief command and direction of the campaign,' lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the directing of the war.' **summa**: a noun, abl. absol. **communi consilio**: 'by common consent.' **dividit**: trans. by changing the voice. **a mari**: *i.e.*, from the south shore where Caesar had landed.

9. **Huic cum**, etc.: 'between this man and the other states . . . there had been (*or* had arisen)': for the dat. see 577, as also for *bello imperioque*.

CHAP. 12.

1. **quos . . . dicunt**: *quos* is subject of *natos (esse); proditum (esse)* depends on *dicunt*, and has for its subject *quos natos (esse)*. Trans. 'of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' or more freely 'who, according to their own

tradition, were born.' Another reading is *ipsa*, with *insula*. **memoria**: abl. of means.

2. **pars**: sc. *incolitur*. **qui omnes**: 'all of whom' (586. vi. *a*). **iis**: 'the.' **quibus . . . pervenerunt**: freely 'from which they have sprung and have come there.' **civitatibus**: see 666. *c*.

3. **aedificia**: sc. *sunt*. **consimilia**: appositive, not predicative. **Gallicis**: sc. *aedificiis;* 'those of the Gauls.'

4. **aut . . . aut**: 'partly . . . partly.' **ad . . . examinatis**: 'of a fixed weight,' lit.? **pro**: 'as.'

5. **mediterraneis**: the tin mines of Cornwall are referred to, Caesar mistaking the distant west, of which he had heard, for an inland district. **maritimis**: iron was once mined in the south of England, now chiefly in the north. **ejus**: *i.e.*, iron, which, being a hard metal to work, has generally been neglected by native tribes, even where it is abundant. **importato**: in emphatic position, 'the bronze they use is imported' (502. *a*). **cujusque**: 'every,' lit. ? **praeter**, etc.: an error on Caesar's part.

6. **fas**: sc. *esse*. **haec**: neut. plur. referring to the animals just mentioned. **animi**: 'amusement,' lit. 'the feelings.' **Loca**: 'the climate,' lit. 'the country.' **remissioribus**: 'less severe' (261. *d*); for the case see 548.

CHAP. 13.

1. **natura**: 'in shape' (414). **triquetra**: sc. *est*. **cujus**: 'of it.' **alter**: 'one,' corresponding to *inferior*. **ad**: 'at.' **quo**: adverb. **appelluntur**: 'put in.'

2. **alterum**: sc. *latus;* 'the second side.' **ad Hispaniam**: as the ancients had no compasses, and seldom sailed out of sight of land, they easily fell into error as to the relative position of distant places. **qua ex parte**: see 618. viii. **dimidio minor**: 'half as large,' lit. ? (598). **pari spatio**, etc.: freely 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Great Britain'; lit. 'of the same length of passage across as is (the passage across) from Gaul to Britain.' For the abl. *spatio* see 383; with *est* sc. *transmissus;* for *atque* see 668.

3. **hoc medio cursu** : 'the middle of this passage,' *i.e.*, to Ireland (175). **Mona**: this name was afterwards given to Anglesea, but probably the Isle of Man is here meant. **subjectae** : sc. *esse*. **insulae** : the Hebrides or Orkney islands probably. **nonnulli** : though Caesar was the first Roman to land in Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. **sub** : 'at the time of.' **bruma**: for *brevima = brevissima*, sc. *dies*. **esse** : the subject is *noctem*.

4. **Nos** : contrasted with *nonnulli*. For the plural see 652. ii ; cf. the use of *demonstravimus* in ch. 2, 2 and ch. 3, 1. **reperiebamus** : trans. by 'could'; the tense implies frequent attempts during Caesar's stay. **nisi** : 'except that.' **certis mensuris** : 'by exact measurements.' **ex aqua** : 'by water,' *i.e.*, with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, which worked on the principle of the hour-glass.

5. **ut . . . opinio** : 'as their belief goes' ; freely 'as they believe.' **illorum** : referring to *nonnulli* of section 3. **milium** : sc. *passuum ;* for the case see 586. viii.

6. **Tertium** : sc. *latus*. **angulus** : the same as *alter angulus*, section 1. **maxime**: 'on the whole.' **milia** : see 231 ; another reading is *milium*, as in section 5. **in** : 'in'; the acc. because of the notion of extending over space.

7. **vicies centum** : 'two thousand' (727. *d*). **milium** : for the case cf. on section 5.

CHAP. 14.

1. **qui** : see 666. *a*. **quae regio** : see 666. *b*. ii. **omnis** : 'entirely.'

2. **Interiores plerique** : 'most of those in the interior' ; *plerique*, an adj. modifying *interiores*, which is used as a substantive. **lacte, pellibus** : see 145. **sunt vestiti** : see 656. iv, and 680. *c*. **hoc**: 'thus,' lit. ? **aspectu** : see 414.

3. **Sunt**: freely 'they have.' **capillo, parte** ; see 383. **rasa**: trans. freely by the active voice.

4. **Uxores communes** : acc. Caesar is probably in error on this point. **deni duodenique** : 'groups of ten or twelve.' For *-que*, lit. 'and (in other cases),' cf. in English 'three and four times a day.' **inter se** : omit in trans.

5. **si qui**: sc. *liberi;* 'if any' (457). **habentur**: 'they are regarded,' with pred. nom. *liberi* (509. *c*). **quo** : adv. — *ad quos ;* 'to whom.'

CHAP. 15.

1. **tamen ut**: 'yet so that.' **omnibus partibus**: 'everywhere,' 'at all points.' **fuerint, compulerint**: for the tense see 529. ii.

2. **compluribus**: *i.e.*, of the Britons. **cupidius**: see 593. iii.

3. **illi**: see 653. vii. **spatio**: *i.e.*, of time; cf. section 4. **castrorum**: a camp was made at the end of each day's march.

4. **missis**: trans. by 'when.' **subsidio**: 'to their aid' (431). **atque his**: 'and these too.' **primis**: apparently the first cohort of a legion was its best. **cum**: 'although.' **intermisso loci spatio**: 'with *or* (more lit.) leaving an interval.' **inter se**: with *intermisso*. **perterritis**: trans. by 'as.' **per medios**: 'between them,' *i.e.*, through the *perexiguum spatium*. **seque . . . receperunt**: not meaning that 'they got away,' as the last words of section 5 show, but that 'they got back again' to their original position.

CHAP. 16.

1. **dimicaretur**: see 556. **nostros**: the legionary soldiers, as contrasted with *equites*, section 2; subject of *esse*. **cedentes**: acc.; 'the retreating enemy' (544. *a*). **possent**: see 670. **ab signis discedere**: they had been trained to fight in solid ranks only. **minus**: 'not well' or 'ill.' **ad**: 'to face.'

2. **autem**: 'while.' **proelio**: see 145. **illi**: 'the enemy.' **cederent**: see 670. **cum**: 'whenever.' **removissent**: for the mood and tense see 642 and 687. *b*. **nostros**: here = *equites*.

3. **Equestris**: with *proelii*. **autem**: 'moreover.' **ratio**: 'regular method,' or 'ordinary style'; in opposition to the unfamiliar tactics described in the last line of section 2. **cedentibus, insequentibus**: either dat. of the participle, referring to the Romans, or perhaps abl. absolute with *Britannis* understood. In either case Caesar is thinking of the danger to his own native cavalry, due to the superiority of the British horsemen. **par atque idem**: 'exactly the same'; emphasis is secured by repetition; cf. ch. 22. 5. **inferebat**: 'brought' or 'involved' (678. *b*).

4. **Accedebat huc ut . . . proeliarentur**: cf. on ch. 6, 2; see 528. *b* and 698. *d*. **intervallis**: see 596. iii. **stationes**: 'reserves *or* supports.' **alios alii**: 'one another' (662. ii). **exciperent**: 'relieved.' **-que**: 'and thus.'

CHAP. 17.

1. **rari**: 'here and there' (705. *d*). **lenius**: 'with less vigor.'

2. **tres**: an unusually large force; cf. IV, ch. 32, 1. **cum**: 'under.' **sic uti . . . absisterent**: 'so as to attack even the standards,' etc.; lit.? They did not hesitate to attack even the main body escorting the actual foragers. **signa**, as in ch. 16, 1, represents the regular formation of the legionary soldiers.

3. **subsidio**: for abl. (= 'in') with *confisi* see 600. *a*. **praecipites**: predicate acc. **egerunt**: see 649. *a*.

4. **sui colligendi**: see 611. iv.

5. **Ex**: 'after.' **quae . . . auxilia**: the *majores copiae* of ch. 11, 8. **discesserunt**: 'disbanded.' **summis copiis**: 'with their full force,' or 'in full force' (596. iii).

CHAP. 18.

1. **consilio**: that, apparently, which is described in ch. 19. **Tamesim**: for the acc. in *-im*, see 718. i. **in fines**: see 618. vii. **hoc**: 'here,' 'at this'; sc. *loco*.

2. **animum advertit**: also written *animadvertit*. **ad**: 'on.'

3. **praefixis**: driven into the face of the bank. **defixae**: driven into the bed of the river.

5. **ea, eo**: 'such' (653. ii). **cum . . . exstarent**: 'although they had only their heads above the water,' lit.? (598). **-que**: 'but.'

CHAP. 19.

1. **ut demonstravimus**: with *deposita spe*. **supra**: ch. 17, 5. **amplioribus copiis**: 'the greater part of his forces,' lit. ? **relictis**: trans. freely by 'kept.' **servabat**: for the force of this and the succeeding imperfects see 678. *b*. **quibus**: 'where,' or 'through which.'

2. **cum**: 'whenever.' **ejecerat**: for the mood and tense see 642. **liberius**: with *ejecerat*: for the meaning see 593. iii; so *latius* and *longius*, section 3. **viis**: see 596. ii. **periculo equitum**: 'danger to cavalry'; for the gen. see 586. ii. **hoc metu**: 'through fear of this' or 'by the fear thus inspired,' lit.? Cf. *hoc dolore*, ch. 4, 4.

3. **Relinquebatur ut . . . pateretur**: 'the only course left Caesar was to forbid his men to leave,' etc. For *ut pateretur* as subject

clause see 694 ; for *discedi* see 556. **tantum noceretur** : freely ' to do as much harm' (571. i ; 557). **in** : ' in the way of,' freely ' by.' **labore atque itinere** : ' by laborious marching' (hendiadys), contrasted with the dashing cavalry raids. The whole clause may be rendered freely ' as the legionaries' powers of enduring hard marching would allow.'

CHAP. 20.

1. **Trinobantes** : with *mittunt*, section 2. **ex qua . . . vitaverat** : this parenthesis may be translated after *legatos . . . mittunt*, section 2, and broken at *cujus pater*, thus : ' The Trinobantes sent, etc. ; from this state, etc. ; his father, etc. ; they promise, etc.' **fidem secutus** : ' attaching himself to ' or ' seeking the protection of,' lit.? cf. IV, ch. 21, 8. **continentem Galliam** : ' the mainland of Gaul ' (588). **obtinuerat** : avoid ' obtain' (705. *c*). **ipse** : ' while he himself,' or ' but who himself ' (664. i).

2. **sese dedituros** : sc. *se* as subject, *sese* being object (514. x).

3. **Cassivellauni** : ' on the part of C.' or ' at the hands of C.' (429. *c*). **mittat qui praesit** : ' to send (some one) to govern' (666. *a*).

4. **exercitui** : see 578. **ad numerum** : ' to the required number.' Note the asyndeton in the last sentence (as also with *ipse* in section 1). Note, too, *his*, *eos* and *illi* used of the same persons.

CHAP. 21.

1. **defensis** : *i.e.*, against Cassivellaunus. **militum** : cf. on *Cassivellauni*, ch. 20, 3.

2. **his** : sc. *legatis*, from *legationibus*. **quo** : adverb. **satis magnus** : ' a considerable.' **convenerit** : for the mood and tense see 670 ; 687. *b*.

3. **autem** : ' now.' **oppidum vocant** : ' call it a town ' ; the object of *vocant* is found in the clause *cum . . . munierunt*. The Gauls, on the other hand, dwelt in regular towns. **silvas impeditas** : ' a piece of woods difficult of access.' **munierunt** : see 642.

4. **opere** : cf. on ch. 9, 4. **ex** : ' on ' (618. viii). **hunc** : ' it' ; lit. ' this (place).'

5. **morati** : ' after holding out.' **non tulerunt** : ' could not withstand.'

6. **repertus**: sc. *est*. **multi**: 'many (of the enemy).' **in fuga**: 'while trying to escape.'

CHAP. 22.

1. **quibus regionibus praeerant**: 'and over which . . . ruled' (577). **his**: *i.e.*, the kings. **navalia castra**: see ch. 11, 5.

2. **incolumes**: acc. with *suos*; *sui* is here identical with *nostri*.

3. **per**: 'through the mediation of' (596. i). **de**: 'to offer.'

4. **neque multum**: 'and little.' **id**: = *non multum aestatis*, 'that little.' **in annos singulos**: 'yearly,' lit. 'for the years one by one.' **vectigalis**: see 586. iii. **penderet**: 'should pay'; for the mood and tense see 625. *c*, and 687. *b*.

5. **interdicit atque imperat**: emphatic repetition (cf. on ch. 16, 3); 'he strictly forbids . . . to harm,' or 'he expressly orders . . . not to harm.' **neu**: 'or,' lit. ? (526. i.)

CHAP. 23.

3. **tanto numero**: see IV, ch. 22, 3 and 4, and V, ch. 2, 2, and ch. 8, 6. **tot navigationibus**: 'although there were (*or* in spite of) so many passages' (548). **portaret**: 'had on board'; the subjunctive may be by attraction (673) (so *remitterentur*, section 4, but not *curarerat*, which is not so essential a part of the sentence) or it may perhaps be characteristic (530).

4. **et . . . et**: dividing these empty vessels into two classes, to the latter of which *mitterentur*, not *remitterentur*, would more strictly apply; trans. 'both those which had made the first trip . . . and those which,' etc. **prioris commeatus**: sc. *ex navibus* (383). **postea**: *i.e.*, after Caesar had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. **faciendas curaverat**: cf. on ch. 1, 1. **numero**: for the abl. see 414. **sexaginta**: acc. agreeing with *quas*. **locum caperent**: 'reached their destination,' *i.e.*, Britain. **caperent, rejicerentur**: with *sic accidit uti* (371).

5. **quod**: 'for.' **necessario collocavit**: cf. on IV, ch. 28, 3. **angustius**: trans. by 'rather' or 'somewhat' (593. iii).

6. **summa**: here trans. 'dead.' **consecuta**: see 550. i. **cum solvisset**: freely 'he set sail . . . and.' **inita vigilia**: 'at the beginning of the watch,' abl. absol.

Transport Ship.

INDEX OF POINTS OF SYNTAX AND ACCIDENCE IN CAESAR, B. G. IV. 20—V. 23.

A. Case Constructions.

Nominative: in apposition, iv. 22, 1.—in predicate, iv. **32, 1**; v. **9, 6**; 11, 8; 13, 3; 14, 5; 16, 4; 17, 1.—of personal pronoun, iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4; and **ille** or **illī** often.

Genitive: (a) *possessive*; in predicate, v. 8, 6.—with **postrīdiē**, v. 10, 1; with **causā**, v. 9, 4; 12, 6, and often with gerund or gerundive.

(b) *subjective*; iv. 27, 3; 33, 1; 34, 1; 35, 2; v. 2, 2; 3, 6; 8, 2; 8, 3; 10, 3; 11, 6; 22, 3.

(c) *objective*; iv. 20, 4; 22, 2; 28, 2; 29, 3; 31, 1; 32, 1; 37, 1; v. 3, 3; 3, 5; 6, 4; 9, 8; 19, 1; 19, 2.—with adjectives; iv. 22, 1; 24, 4; v. 6, 1; 6, 3.

(d) *partitive*; with neuters, iv. 21, 9; 22, 3; 32, 2; v. 1, 7; 2, 3; 7, 1; 10, 2; 22, 4 (twice).—with **mīlia**, iv. **37, 2** and often **passuum**, as v. 2, 3; 13, 7.—with superlatives; v. **3, 1**; **15, 4**; **20, 1**.—in predicate; v. **7, 8**.

(e) *quality;* iv. 22, 1; 38, 5; v. 2, 2; 2, 3; 5, 3; 12, 5; 16, 1; 18, 3; 23, 4.—in predicate; v. 6, 1; 11, 5; 13, 5; 13, 7.

(f) *price;* iv. 21, 7; v. 4, 3.

Dative: (a) *indirect object;* iv. 22, 1; v. 6, 4; 18, 5; and often.—with adjectives; iv. 20, 2; 21, 7; 29, 1; v. 9, 1 (?); 12, 3.—with special intransitive verbs, iv. 21, 2; 21, 5; 21, 8; 27, 5; v. 1, 1; 2, 4; 7, 2; 19, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (twice). [**Imperō** with dat. and acc., iv. 22, 2; v. 1, 6; 20, 4].—with compound verbs; iv. 25, 6; 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 2, 3; 11, 9; 16, 4; 22, 1; and combined with acc., v. 1, 1; 9, 1; 11, 9.

(b) *interest;* iv. 25, 3; 26, 4; 36, 2; v. 3, 5; 9, 1; 20, 4.

(c) *purpose;* iv. 29, 4; 31, 2; v. 1, 4; 2, 3; 9, 1 (?); 9, 8; 15, 4.

(d) *interest and purpose* (*double dative*); iv. 20, 2; 25, 1; 37, 2; v. 9, 1; 11, 7.

(e) *possession* (with **dēsum**), iv. 26, 5; 30, 1.

(f) *apparent agent;* iv. 24, 2.

Accusative: (a) *predicate acc.;* iv. 21, 7; 23, 2; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 2; 1, 3; 16, 4; 17, 3; 21, 3; 22, 2; 23, 1; 23, 6.

(b) *limit of motion;* iv. 21, 6; v. 7, 5.

(c) *extent of space;* iv. 23, 6; v. 9, 2; 10, 2; 11, 8; 13, 1; 13, 6.

(d) *duration of time;* iv. 34, 4; v. 7, 3 (twice); 13, 3.

(e) *adverbial;* v. 1, 3; 2, 2; 3, 1; 7, 2; 14, 1; 19, 3.

(f) with **propius**; iv. 28, 2.

Ablative: (a) *separation;* iv. 21, 9; 24, 1; 30, 2 (twice); 34, 5; v. 6, 5; 11, 1 (?).

(b) *cause;* iv. 34, 1; v. 4, 4.

(c) *comparison;* iv. 37, 3 (?).

(d) *means or instrument;* iv. 22, 4; 24, 2; 25, 1; 25, 2; 26, 4; 27, 1; 28, 3; 29, 2; 29, 4; 31, 3; 32, 5; 33, 3; 35, 1; 35, 3; 37, 1; v. 1, 5; 1, 8; 5, 2; 6, 3; 6, 5; 7, 1; 8, 4; 8, 5; 9, 4; 11, 4; 12, 1; 13, 4; 14, 2; 15, 1; 16, 2; 17, 1; 18, 5; 19, 1; 19, 2 (twice); and often.—with **ūtor** often; in iv. 38, 2, with double abl.

(e) *measure of difference ;* iv. 22, 4 ; v. 13, 2 ; so **multō**, v. 4, 4 ; **nihilō**, v. 4, 3 ; 7, 3 ; and **paulō**, iv. 23, 2, and often. **Hōc** or **eō** with comparatives, iv. 30, 1 ; v. 1, 2 ; 9, 1 ; 14, 2.

(f) *specification ;* v. 3, 1 ; 5, 3 ; 13, 1 ; 14, 2 ; 23, 4.

(g) *manner and attendant circumstances ;* iv. 25, 4 ; 27, 3 ; 28, 1 ; 31, 3 ; 33, 1 ; v. 1, 7 ; 2, 2 ; 11, 2 ; 16, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 18, 1 ; 18, 5 ; 23, 2 ; of accordance ; v. 1, 7 ; 4, 3 ; 6, 6 ; 11, 8.

(h) *accompaniment ;* iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 3 ; 17, 5.

(i) *quality ;* v. 3, 4 ; 4, 4 ; 13, 2 ; 14, 3.

(j) *place where ;* iv. 34, 2 ; v. 5, 4 ; 15, 1 ; 18, 1 ; 19, 1 ; with **cōnfidō**, v. 17, 3.

(k) *time when ;* iv. 20, 1 ; 34. 1 ; v. 3, 6 ; 23, 6 ; and often with words expressing time ; (but not **cōnsulibus**, v. 1, 1 ; **lūce**, v. 8, 2 ; **vigiliā**, v. 23, 6).

(l) *time within which ;* iv. 27, 6 ; 37, 3 (?) ; v. 2, 2.

(m) *absolute ;* concessive (=*although*) ; iv. 20, 4 ; 31, 3 ; 34, 2 ; v. 11, 2 ; 23, 3.—conditional (=*if*) ; iv. 30, 2.—with pres. partic. ; iv. 25, 3 ; v. 7, 7 ; 16, 3 (?).—with deponent perf. partic. ; iv. 26, 5 ; v. 8, 2 ; 10, 2 (twice) ; 23, 6.—with noun or adj. as predicate ; iv. 20, 1 ; 23, 6 ; 24, 2 ; 24, 3 ; 28, 3 ; 32, 5 ; 36, 2 (twice) ; v. 1, 1 ; 7, 5 ; 12, 6 ; 15, 3 ; 23, 3.—with negative ; v. 8, 4 ; 11, 6.—referring to object in acc. ; iv. 21, 6 ; v. 4, 3.—with subject omitted ; v. 16, 3 (?).

B. Modal Constructions.

(a) **Final or purpose clauses** : *adverbial ;* with **ut** or **nē** ; v. 3, 6 ; 4, 1 ; 8, 1 ; 10, 1 ; 23, 5 ; with **quō** ; v. 3, 6.—*relative ;* iv. 21, 5 ; 22, 1 ; v. 1, 7 ; 1, 9 ; 9. 1 ; 10. 2 ; 20, 3.—*substantival ;* iv. 21, 2 ; 21, 6 ; 21, 8 ; 25, 3 ; 25, 5 ; 27, 4 ; v. 1, 1 ; 4, 2 ; 6, 3 ; 6, 4 ; 6, 5 ; 6, 6 ; 7, 2 ; 7, 3 ; 8, 3 ; 11, 4 ; 20, 3 ; 22, 1 ; 22, 5 (with neu) ; with **ut** omitted ; iv. 21, 8 ; 23, 5.—with **vereor** ; v. 3, 5.—with **quōminus**, iv. 22, 4.—with **quīn**, v. 2, 2.

(b) **Consecutive or result clauses** : *adverbial :* iv. 23, 3 ; 28, 2 ; 33, 2 ; 33, 3 ; v. 11, 2 (restrictive) ; 15, 1 ; 17, 2 ; 18, 5.—*substantival ;* iv. 29, 1 ; 31, 3 ; 35, 1 ; v. 6, 5 ; 16, 4 ; 19, 3 ; 23 3 and 4.

(c) **Relative clauses of characteristic**; iv. 21, 9; 29, 4; 34, 4; 38, 2; v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).

(d) **Indirect questions**; iv. 20, 4; 21, 9; 23, 5; 34, 5; v. 2, 3; 3, 3; 4, 1; 8, 1; 9, 1.—**deliberative**; v. 22, 4.

(e) **Relative clauses** [see also under a, c, g, i.].—often with **quī** or **ut** (=*as*) and the indic.—in indirect discourse in subj.; iv. 21, 8; 22, 1; 23, 5; 27, 1; 32, 1 (twice); v. 1, 1; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 1; 11, 4; 21, 2.—in subj. by attraction, v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).—in indic., though with indirect discourse; iv. 30, 1; 31, 1; 31, 2; 32, 2 (twice); 35, 1; v. 5, 2 (twice); 11, 4.—with **quīcumque**, iv. 26, 1 (indic.); v. 7, 1 (subj. in indirect discourse).

(f) **Temporal clauses**: **ubi** and indic.; iv. 25, 1; 26, 2 (frequentative); v. 9, 1.—**simul (atque)** and indic.; iv. 26, 5; 27, 1; v. 3, 3.—**posteāquam** and indic.; iv. 37, 4; v. 3, 5; 6, 4.—**postquam** and indic.; iv. 28, 1.—**dum** (=*while*) and indic.; iv. 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3; v. 22, 1.—**dum** (=*until*) and subj.; iv. 23, 4.—**quoad** and indic.; v. 17, 3.—**priusquam** and subj.; iv. 21, 1.—**cum**, frequentative and indic.; iv. 33, 1; v. 19, 2; 21, 3; with subj. in indirect discourse; v. 16, 2.—**cum** and subj.; iv. 25, 4; 25, 6; 26, 4; 28, 2; 32, 3; 37, 1; 37, 2; v. 1, 6; 2, 2; 10, 2; 16, 1; 17, 2; 18, 2; 22, 2; 23, 5; 23, 6; in v. 5, 4, in indirect discourse for the fut. indic.

(g) **Causal clauses**: often with **quod** and indic.—with **quod** and subj. in indirect discourse; iv. 22, 1; 27, 5; v. 6, 3 (twice, *dīceret* exceptional); 10, 2; 16, 1; 16, 2.—with **quoniam** and subj., in virtual indirect discourse; v. 3, 5.—with **cum** and subj.; iv. 23, 2; 28, 3; 29, 3; 30, 1; 31, 3; 32, 1; 38, 2; v. 17, 3; 22, 4.—with **quī** and subj.; iv. 23, 5; v. 4, 3; 7, 7.—with **quod**=*the fact that*; v. 6, 2.

(h) **Conditional clauses**: in direct discourse; iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4.—in indirect discourse; iv. 20, 2 (twice); 33, 2 (perhaps attraction); 34, 5; 35, 1; 37, 1; v. 1, 8; 3, 7; 7, 7.

(i) **Concessive or adversative clauses**: with **etsī** and indic.; iv. 20, 1; 31, 1; 35, 1; v. 4, 1; 11, 5.—with **cum** and subj.; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 5; v. 8, 6; 15, 4; 18, 5.—with **quī** and subj.; v. 4, 4.

(j) **Infinitive**: *complementary*; with **polliceor**, iv. 21, 5; with **imperō**, v. 1, 3; 7, 6.—with **prohibeō**, iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 6; 19, 2.—with **vereor**, v. 6, 5.

in indirect discourse : introduced informally, **v. 3, 6 ; 6, 5.**—with subj. acc. omitted, iv. 27, 1 ; 27, 5 ; v. 20, 2.—with **statuō**, v. 7, 1 ; 11, 5.—*substantival ;* iv. 30, 2 ; **v. 4, 3 ; 4, 4 ; 11, 5 ; 12, 6.**—*historical ;* **v. 6, 5 ; 6, 6.**

(k) **Gerund :** *genitive ;* with **causā**, v. 6, 2 ; 17, 2 ; 19, 2 ; with other nouns, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 1, 2 ; 6, 4 ; 8, 4 ; 17, 3 ; 17, 4 ; with adjective, v. 6, 3.—*accusative ;* with **ad**, iv. 23, 1 ; 23, 4 ; 29, 3 ; v. 5, 2.—*ablative ;* with **in**, iv. 32, 5.

(l) **Gerundive** : as mere predicate adj., v. 8, 4.—passive periphrastic ; iv. 22, 2 ; 24, 2 ; 36, 2 ; v. 7, 1 ; 7, 2.—gerundive construction ; *genitive*, with **causā**, iv. 22, 1 ; 30, 2 ; v. 12, 2 ; 21, 3,—with other nouns, iv. 22, 2 ; 34, 5 ; v. 11, 8.—with **suī**, iv. 34, 5 ; v. 17, 4.—*accusative*, with **ad**, iv. 20, 2 ; 21, 1 ; 22, 3 ; 29, 4 ; 31, 2 ; 34, 2 ; v. 1, 2 ; 1, 4 ; 7, 6.—*ablative*, with **in**, iv. 27, 4 ; v. 19, 3.—*predicatively*, with **cūrō**, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 1, 1 ; 23, 4 ; with **dō**, iv. 22, 5.

(m) **Supine : in -um**, iv. 32, 1 ; **in -ū**, iv. 30, 2.

(n) **Participles :** used as substantives, iv. 27, 3 ; v. 4, 3 ; 4, 4 ; 6, 3 (?) ; 9, 8 ; 16, 1 ; 16, 3 (?) ; 16, 4 ; 20, 2 ; 20, 4.—used as adj. and compared, v. 12, 6.—as predicative complement, iv. 23, 2 ; 26, 2 ; 26, 4 ; 37, 1 ; v. 2, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 23, 1.—present part., iv. 25, 3 ; 26, 2 ; 26, 4 ; 37, 1 ; v. 1, 1 ; 7, 7 (twice).—perfect partic. with future reference, iv. 27, 6 ; 30, 2 ; v. 6, 5 ; 22, 1.—perfect partic. with force of present, v. 7, 3 ; and often with verbs of *thinking.*

C. Use of Tenses.

Present : historical present : with primary sequence, iv. 21, 2 ; 21, 5 ; 21, 8 ; and often with secondary sequence, iv. 21, 9 ; v. 1, 1 ; 11, 2 ; 22, 4 ; with shift of sequence, v. 7, 7 ; 11, 4.—present subj., in indirect discourse for fut. indic. ; v. 7, 7.—with **dum** (=*while*) ; iv. 22, 1 ; 32, 1 ; 34, 3 ; v. 22, 1.

Imperfect : as past progressive, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 3, 2.—of repeated or habitual action (or repeated failure), iv. 20, 4 ; 25, 3 ; 26, 1-4 ; 31, 2 ; v. 1, 5 ; 2, 4 ; 6, 6 ; 10, 2 ; 13, 4 ; 16, 2 ; 16, 3 ; 19, 1 ; 19, 2.—inceptive, iv. 31, 2 (*comparābat*).—conative ; iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 6.—with peculiar force, **accēdēbat** and **relinquēbātur**,[1] iv. 22, 4 ; v. 6, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 19, 3.—imperf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. indic. ; iv. 20, 2 ; v. 5, 4.

[1] In view of the literal meaning of these verbs, we should expect the **pluperfect.**

Perfect: rendered by present **(cōnsuēvī)**, iv. 24, 1; 29, 1; 33, 3; v. 1, 2; 7, 3; 21, 3.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 33, 1; v. 14, 5; 21, 3.—perf. subj., in clause of result; v. 15, 1.—perf. subj., in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic.; v. 1, 8.

Pluperfect: rendered by past **(cōnsuēveram)**, iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 1.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 26, 1; 26, 4; v. 16, 2; 19, 2.—plupf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic., iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 27, 1; 34, 5; 35, 1; v. 6, 6.—**ūsī fuerant**, iv. 38, 2.—**dispositās habērent**, v. 16, 4.

Future perfect: iv. 25, 3.

D. Miscellaneous.

(a) impersonal passive; iv. 23, 2; 24, 2; 26, 1; 27, 4; 28, 1 (twice); 29, 4; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 3, 3; 4, 3; 6, 1; 7, 2; 7, 9; 8, 5; 16, 1 (twice); 19, 3 (thrice).

(b) passive with reflexive force; iv. 32, 2; v. 14, 2.

(c) **videor** and **dīcor** used personally; v. 2, 4; 9, 4; 11, 2.

(d) **necesse est**, iv. 29, 3; **oportet**, iv. 29, 4; **interest**, v. 4, 3.

(e) **quam** with superlative; iv. 21, 2; v. 4, 3; with **possum** added, v. 1, 1; 11, 4.

(f) comparative with standard of comparison unexpressed; iv. 20, 4; 23, 2; 25, 1; 26, 5; 30, 1; 32, 3; 35, 2; v. 7, 2; 8, 2; 9, 8; 15, 2; 16, 1; 19, 2 (twice); 19, 3; 23, 5.

(g) **amplius** with **quam** omitted; iv. 37, 3; v. 8, 6.

(h) distributive numerals; v. 6, 4; 14, 4; 22, 4.—numeral adverb; v. 13, 7.

(i) relative pronoun and pronominal adjective [see also under Modal Constructions, a, c, e, g, i].

with coordinating force; iv. 23, 3; 24, 4; and often; in adverbial dependent clause; iv. 23, 2; 25, 1; 28, 2; and often.—with antecedent omitted (= *is quī*); iv. 22, 3; 25, 3; 27, 1; 31, 2; 34, 3; v. 1, 2 (twice); 2, 3; 6, 6; 14, 1; 20, 3.—with antecedent repeated; iv. 32, 1; v. 2, 3; 12, 2; 13, 3.—with antecedent following; iv. 26, 4; 31, 2; v. 6, 5; 17, 5.—with antecedent incorporated into relative clause; iv. 21, 4; 21, 8; 24, 1; 29, 1; 31, 2; v. 6, 2; 14, 1; 22, 1.—**quīcumque**, iv. 26, 1; v. 7, 1.—**īdem quī**, iv. 24, 4; 35, 1; 36, 4; v. 11, 2; 11, 7.—**pār quī**, v. 8, 2 [**pār atque**, v. 13, 2].—**tantus quantus**, iv. 35, 3; v. 19, 3; with **tantus** omitted, iv. 21, 9.

(j) **is** (=*such*): v. 18, 5.—**hōc mētū** = **hūjus reī metū**; v. 19, 2; similarly 4, 4.

(k) **ille**, marking change of subject; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 6; 33, 2; 37, 2; v. 6, 3; 7, 8; 7, 9; 9, 3; 15, 3; 15, 5; 16, 2; 20, 4.

(l) indefinite pronouns and pronominal adjectives: **quis (quī)**; v. 7, 2; 14, 5.—**quisquam**; iv. 20, 3 (twice).—**ūllus**; iv. 29, 2; 32, 1; v. 23, 3. **nūllus**; iv. 28, 2; v. 13, 6.—**aliquis**; iv. 26, 2; 32, 2.—**nōnnūllī**; v. 3, 5; 13, 3; 15, 2; 23, 2.—**alius**; iv. 26, 3; 29, 4; v. 11, 3; 21, 5; repeated, iv. 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 16, 4.—**alter**; v. 3, 3; 13, 1; 18, 2; (=*the second*) 13, 2.—**cēterī**; v. 6, 1.—**quisque**; v. 8, 6; 12, 5; 14, 5.—**uterque**; iv. 26, 1.

(m) **inter sē**: (=*one another*); iv. 25, 5; 30, 1; v. 3, 2; 14, 4.

(n) **post diem quartum quam**; iv. 28, 1.

(o) **cum . . tum**; v. 4, 3.

(p) **nē . . . quidem**; v. 11, 6.

(q) **inquit**; iv. 25, 3.

(r) **medius**; iv. 36, 3; v. 3, 4; 8, 2; 13, 3.

(s) adjective with adverbial force; v. 9, 6; 16, 4; 17, 1.

(t) plural of abstract nouns; iv. 38, 2; v. 1, 2.

(u) first plural = *I*; **nōs**, v. 6, 1; 13, 4; cf. also, v. 2, 2; 3, 1; 19, 1; 22, 1.

(v) concords: apposition; v. 3, 4; 4, 2; 20, 1 (twice).—agreement with nearer noun; iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 2; 11, 5.—sense construction; iv. 36, 4.

E. Accidence.

(a) third declension, I-stems; accus. in **-im**, v. 18, 1; abl. in **-ī**, **nāvī**; iv. 21, 9, and often; **continentī**, iv. 31, 2, and often, but **continente**, v. 8, 1.

(b) **jūsjūrandum**; v. 6, 6; **rēs pūblica**, iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 2; **vīs**, **vīrēs**, iv. 35, 3; v. 7, 7; 10, 2; **fās**, v. 12, 6; **locus**, **loca**, v. 8, 6, and often.

(c) **fīrmiter**; iv. 26, 1.

(d) **nōbīscum**; v. 17, 5; **sēcum**, iv. 32, 2; 35, 1; v. 5, 4; 6, 1.

(e) frequentative verbs; iv. 32, 1; v. 6, 4; 7, 8.

(f) contracted verbal forms; iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 24, 1; 24, 4; 25, 6; 27, 1; 27, 5; 33, 3; v. 1, 1; 8, 4; 21, 3; 23, 5.

VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, prep. with abl., (**ā** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in.*

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide, conceal.*

abi-ēs, -etis, f., *fir.*

ab-jiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw away.*

abs-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut, cut away.*

absēns, -entis, (pres. part. of **absum**) *absent.*

ab-sistō, -ere, -stitī, *withdraw, keep away from, hesitate to attack.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, *be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant.*

ac (shorter form for **atque**, used only before vowels), *and, and further;* in comparisons, *than, as.*

ac-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *approach, draw near, come up;* (used as passive of **addō**) *be added.*

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, *befall, happen, occur.*

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive, admit; suffer, meet with; accept; hear.*

acclīvitās, -tātis, f., *ascent, slope, steepness.*

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fit, fit on, adjust.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle.*

ācriter, adv., (**ācrius, ācerrimē**), *fiercely, hotly, keenly, desperately.*

actuārius, a, um, *for rowing, swift.*

acūtus, a, um, *sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards; with a view to, for; according to; near, by, in, among.*

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *equal.*

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *bring, bring in; draw towards, pull taut; induce, influence, force.*

adēmptus, a, um, *from* **adimo.**

ad-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *visit; reach, get at; approach.*

ad-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *hurl, cast.*

ad-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *take away, destroy.*

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, access, means of approach, landing-place.*

ad-jiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *cast; throw up, pile up.*

ad-juvō, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *assist, help; be of assistance.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry out, execute, attend to, manage.*

ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *allow, incur, suffer.*

admodum, adv., *very, very much, exceedingly.*

ad-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*

Aduātucī, -ōrum, m., *the Aduatuci*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *young man; the younger.*

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach, coming.*

adversus, a, um, *opposite, facing.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, *turn towards;* **animum advertō,** *observe, notice.*

advolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fly to, rush upon, swoop down.*

aedificium, ī, n., *building, homestead.*

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, *build.*

Aeduus, ī, m., *an Aeduan;* in plur., *the Aedui,* a tribe in the centre of Gaul.

aegrē, adv., (**aegrius, aegerrimē**), *scarcely, with difficulty.*

aequāliter, adv., *uniformly.*

aequinoctium, ī, n., *equinox.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze, copper.*

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *estimate, value, assess.*

aestuārium, ī, n., *estuary, inlet.*

aestus, ūs, m., *tide.*

aetās, -tātis, f., *age, years.*

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *bring.*

af-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fasten, attach.*

affīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare, assert.*

affīxus, a, um, from **affigo.**

afflictō, āre, āvī, ātum, *buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.*

afflictus, a, um, from **affligo.**

af-flīgō, ere, -flīxī, -flictum, *shatter, damage, wreck.*

Āfricus, ī, m, *south-west wind.*

ager, agrī, m., *field, land, country, territory.*

agger, eris, m., *mound.*

ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *attack.*

aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attach, join.*

agmen, -minis, n., *army on the march, line of march, column;* **novissimum agmen,** *the rear.*

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; bring up, advance; do, carry on.*

alacritās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, enthusiasm, ardor, keenness, dash.*

albus, a, um, *white.*

aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*

aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time.*

aliquantus, a, um, *some;* neut. as subst., *some portion, a considerable part.*

aliquī, qua, quod, *some, any.*

aliquis, quid, *someone, something.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise, in a different manner.*

alius, a, ud, *other, another; different;* **alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another;* **alii . . . alii,** *some . . . others.*

alō, ere, aluī, altum, *feed; rear, keep.*

Alpēs, ium, f. plur., *the Alps.*

alter, era, erum, *the other; the second.*

altitūd-ō, -inis, f., *height; depth.*

altus, a, um, *high, lofty; deep;* neut. as subst., **altum, ī,** n., *the deep, deep water, the sea.*

Ambiānī, ōrum, m., *the Ambiani,* a tribe in the north of Gaul.

āmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship, alliance.*

ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *lose.*

amplius, compar. adv., *more,* (*any*) *further, besides.*

amplus, a, um, *large, great.*

an, conj., *or.*

Ancalites, um, m., *the Ancalites,* a tribe in Britain.

ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*

Andēs, ium; m., *the Andes,* a tribe near the mouth of the Loire.

angulus, ī, m., *corner, angle.*

angustē, adv., *closely.*

angustus, a, um, *narrow, small, contracted;* neut. as subst., *critical position.*

animadver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *notice, observe.*

animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, heart, spirit, will; feelings; courage.*

annōtinus, a, um, *of the year before.*

annus, ī, m., *year.*

ānser, eris, m., *goose.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before;* adv., *before, formerly, previously; above.*

anteā, adv., *before, previously.*

ante-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum, *precede; surpass.*

antenna, ae, f., *yard.*

ante-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place before, prefer, regard of more importance than.*

antīquitus, adv., *in olden times, long ago.*

Ap., a contraction for **Appius.**

aper-iō, īre, -uī, -tum, *open;* perf. part. pass. **apertus** as adj., *open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear; unchecked.*

appellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call.*

ap-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *bring in to shore.*

Appius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

apportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring.*

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approach, draw near, come near.*

appulsus, a, um, from **appello, ere.**

aptus, a, um, *suited, suitable, fit.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *at, with, among, near, in the presence of.*

aqua, ae, f., *water.*

aquila, ae, f., *eagle*, the standard of a Roman legion.

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania*, the south-western part of Gaul.

Aquītānus, ī, m., *an Aquitanian;* in plur., *the Aquitani*, a people dwelling in the south-western part of Gaul.

Ar-ar, -aris, m., *the Arar*, a river flowing south into the Rhone.

arbiter, trī, m., *arbitrator, judge.*

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *think, consider, judge.*

arbor, oris, f., *tree.*

arcess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *summon, send for, fetch; invite, call in.*

Arduenna, ae, f., *the Ardennes*, a forest in the north-east of Gaul.

āridus, a, um, *dry;* neut. as subst., *dry land.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., a chief of the Germans.

arma, ōrum, n. plur., *arms; tackle, equipment.*

armāmenta, ōrum, n. plur., *tackle, rigging, fittings.*

armātūra, ae, f., *armor.*

armō, āre, āvī, ātum, *arm, equip, fit out;* perf. part. in plur. as subst., *armed men.*

aspectus, ūs, m., *appearance.*

at, conj., *but; yet, at least.*

atque, conj., *and, and further;* in comparisons, *than, as.*

Atre-bas, -batis, m., *an Atrebatian;* in plur., *the Atrebates*, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.

Atrius, ī, m., *Quintus Atrius*, an officer of Caesar's.

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *touch, border on.*

auctōrī-tās, -tātis, f., *influence, weight, prestige; power.*

audācter, adv., *boldly, confidently, fearlessly.*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture, attempt.*

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear, listen to, hear of.*

Aulus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

aureus, a, um, *of gold, golden.*

aurīga, ae, m., *charioteer.*

ausus, a, um, from **audeo.**

aut, conj., *or, or else;* repeated, *either . . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, whereas, while; moreover, now.*

auxilior, ārī, ātus sum, *give aid, help, assist.*

auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help, assistance, rescue; resource, support;* in plur., *auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn away, turn aside.*

Axona, ae, f., a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.

B

barbarus, a, um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian;* m. as subst., **barbarus, ī**, m., *a foreigner, barbarian,* or *native.*

Belgae, ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians,* a people occupying the north-east of Gaul.

Belgium, ī, n., *Belgium,* the country of the *Belgae.*

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*

bellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make war, fight.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bellovaci,* a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.

bellum, ī, n., *war, hostilities, campaign.*

bene, adv., (**melius, optimē**), *well.*

beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor.*

Bibrax, -actis, f., a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul.

Bibrocī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bibroci,* a tribe of Britain.

bīnī, ae, a, *two each, two.*

brevis, e, *short;* as adv., **brevī**, *in a short time, quickly.*

brevitās, -tātis, f., *shortness.*

Britannī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons.*

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

Britannicus, a, um, *British, of* or *with the Britons.*

brūma, ae, f., *the winter solstice.*

Brūtus, ī, m., *Decimus Brutus,* a lieutenant with Caesar.

C

C., an abbreviation of **Gāius** (or **Cāius**).

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, be slain.*

caeruleus, a, um, *blue, dark blue.*

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caius Julius Caesar,* the Roman general.

Cāius, ī, m., see **Gāius.**

Caletī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Caleti,* a tribe at the mouth of the Seine.

campus, ī, m., *field, plain.*

Cantium, ī, n., *Kent,* in the south-east of England.

capillus, ī, m., *hair.*

capio, ere, cēpī, captum, *take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach, make; take up, adopt, form.*

captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*

captus, ūs, m., *capacity, nature.*

cap-ut, -itis, n., *head, person.*

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.*

carrus, ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

Carvilius, ī, m., a king ruling in Kent.

Cassī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cassi,* a tribe in Britain.

Cassivellaunus, ī, m., a British chief.

castellum, ī, n., *fort, stronghold, redoubt.*

castra, ōrum, n. plur., *camp, encampment.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *happening, emergency, contingency; accident, chance.*

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason, motive, provocation;* in abl. sing., *for the sake of, for the purpose of.*

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *retreat, give way, retire; yield; withdraw.*

celer, eris, ere, *swift, rapid.*

celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness, speed, rapidity, mobility.*

celeriter, adv., (**celerius, celerrimē**), *swiftly, quickly, rapidly.*

Celtae, ārum, m. plur., *the Celts,* or Gauls, one of the three great nations inhabiting Gaul.

Cēnimāgnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Cenimagni,* a tribe of Britain.

centum, *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion* (an officer in the Roman army).

cēpī, from **capio.**

certāmen, -minis, n., *contest, struggle, engagement.*

certē, adv., *certainly, at least, at all events.*

certus, a, um, *certain, fixed, specified, exact, sure, definite;* **certiorem facere**, *to inform.*

cēterī, ae, a, *the others, the rest.*

Cingetorīx, -īgis, m., 1. a chief of the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *about.*

circuitus, a, um, perf. part. of **circumeo.**

circuitus, ūs, m., *circumference, circuit.*

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *surround, encircle.*

circum-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum or **circuitum**, *go around, make the rounds of, visit.*

circummūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *surround, invest, blockade.*

circum-sistō, ere, -stetī, *surround.*

circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, *surround.*

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround, outflank; betray.*

cis, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

citerior, ius, (comparative) *hither, nearer.*

citō, adv., (**citius, citissimē**), *quickly, nimbly.*

citrā, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state.*

clam, adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep shouting, cry out.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, shouting, cry.*

classis, is, f., *fleet.*

Claudius, ī, m., *Appius Claudius*, consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, *close;* w. **agmen**, *bring up the rear.*

clīēns, -entis, m., *dependant, vassal.*

coāctus, a, um, from **cogo.**

coēgī, from **cogo.**

coepī, isse, coeptus sum, *began, have begun.*

coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain, check, coerce.*

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *perceive, learn, find out, ascertain, become acquainted with;* in perf. tenses, *know, be aware.*

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect, gather, get together; compel, force.*

co-hors, -hortis, f., *a cohort*, one-tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., *encouraging, address, appeal.*

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, address, urge, call upon.*

collātus, a, um, from **confero.**

collaudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, extol, highly commend.*

col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *gather;* with **se**, *collect oneself, recover, rally.*

collis, is, m., *hill.*

collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *place, station; arrange, stow.*

colloquium, ī, n., *interview, conference.*

col-loquor, ī, -locūtus sum, *converse, confer, take counsel, have an interview.*

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, *till, cultivate.*

color, ōris, m., *color.*

commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies, provisions; passage, trip, relay.*

commendō, āre, āvī, ātum, *commend, entrust.*

comminus, adv., *hand to hand, in close combat.*

com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *join; trust;* w. **proelium**, *begin.*

Commius, ī, m., a king of the Atrebates.

commodē, adv., *easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.*

commodus, a, um, *convenient, suitable, advantageous, favorable;* neut. as subst., **commodum, ī**, *advantage, profit.*

commoror, ārī, ātus sum, *stay, wait, delay.*

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, stir, alarm, disturb; influence, impress.*

commūnis, **e**, *common, general, joint, concerted.*

commūtātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *change, turn.*

comparō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *prepare, arrange for, provide, procure, raise, get.*

com-pellō, **ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsum**, *drive, drive in, gather.*

com-perīō, **īre**, **-perī**, **-pertum**, *learn, find out, discover.*

compl-eō, **ēre**, **-ēvī**, **-ētum**, *fill, fill up; man.*

complūrēs, **a**, *several, many, a great many.*

comportō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *bring in, collect.*

compre-hendō, **ere**, **-hendī**, **-hēnsum**, *seize, grasp, catch, capture, take.*

compulī, from **compellō**.

con-cidō, **ere**, **-cidī**, *fall.*

con-cīdō, **ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum**, *cut down, slay;* perf. part. as adj., *cut up, broken.*

concīliō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *win over, reconcile.*

concilium, **ī**, n., *meeting, assembly, council.*

concīsus, **a**, **um**, from **concīdo.**

concursus, **ūs**, m., *rushing together, collision.*

condiciō, **-ōnis**, f., *terms, agreement.*

Condrūsī, **ōrum**, m. plur., *the Condrusi,* a tribe in the northeast of Gaul.

con-dūcō, **ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, *gather, assemble.*

cōn-ferciō, **īre**, **-fersī**, **-fertum**, *pack closely;* perf. part. **cōnfertus**, **a**, **um**, *crowded together, in close array, in close order, in masses.*

cōnferō, **cōnferre**, **contulī**, **collātum**, *gather, collect, bring in, convey;* with **se**, *betake oneself;* w. **culpam**, *lay.*

cōnfertus, **a**, **um**, from **confercio.**

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

cōn-ficiō, **ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, *finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; bring to a close,* in passive, *be over; be spent, exhausted, worn out.*

cōn-fīdō, **ere**, **-fīsus sum**, *trust, rely on, have confidence, be confident, feel sure.*

cōnfīrmō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *strengthen; establish; declare, give an assurance; encourage, reassure, rouse.*

cōnfīsus, **a**, **um**, from **confīdo.**

cōnflīgō, **ere**, **-flīxī**, **-flīctum**, *contend, engage, fight.*

cōnfluēns, **entis**, m., *confluence.*

con-gredior, **ī**, **-gressus sum**, *engage, contend, fight.*

con-iciō, **ere**, **jēcī**, **-jectum**, *hurl, cast, throw; put, place.*

conjūnctim, adv., *jointly, together.*

con-jungō, **ere**, **-jūnxī**, **-jūnctum**, *join, connect, unite.*

conjūrātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *conspiracy, combination, league.*

conjūrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.*

cōnor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.*

cōn-scendō, **ere**, **-scendī**, **-scēnsum**, *climb up; embark on, go on board.*

cōn-scrībō, **ere**, **-scrīpsī**, **-scrīptum**, *enlist, enroll, levy.*

cōnsector, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *follow up, pursue.*

cōnsecūtus, **a**, **um**, from **consequor.**

cōnsēdī, from **consīdo.**

cōnsēnsus, **ūs**, m., *agreement, consent.*

cōn-sentiō, **īre**, **-sēnsī**, **-sēnsum**, *combine, conspire.*

cōn-sequor, **ī**, **-secūtus sum**, *follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.*

cōn-sīdō, **ere**, **-sēdī**, **-sessum**, *encamp, take up a position, settle.*

cōnsilium, **ī**, n., *plan, design, intention, resolve, purpose; judgment, prudence, discretion.*

cōnsimilis, **e**, *very similar, like.*

cōn-sistō, **ere**, **-stitī**, *take up position, stand, get* (or *keep*) *a footing; stand still, halt, stop, make a stand.*

cōnsōlor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *console, speak kindly.*

cōnspectus, **ūs**, m., *sight, view, presence.*

cōn-spiciō, **ere**, **-spexī**, **-spectum**, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

cōnspicor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

cōnspīrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *combine, conspire, join a movement.*

cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly.*

cōnstitī, from **consisto**.

cōnstit-uō, **ere**, **-uī**, **ūtum**, *establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.*

cōn-stō, **āre**, **-stitī**, **-stātum**, *stand firm;* impersonal use, *it is certain, agreed.*

cōn-suēscō, **ere**, **-suēvī**, **-suētum**, *become accustomed;* in perf. tenses, *be accustomed, be wont.*

cōnsuētū-dō, **-dinis**, f., *custom, habit, way.*

cōn-sul, **-sulis**, m., *consul*, the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.

cōnsul-ō, **ere**, **-uī**, **-tum**, *consult;* w. dat., *consult the interests of, take thought for.*

cōnsultō, adv., *designedly, on purpose.*

cōn-sūmō, **ere**, **-sūmpsī**, **sūmptum**, *spend; consume, exhaust; lose, destroy.*

conten-dō, **ere**, **-dī**, **-tum**, *hasten, make one's way, push on; strive, exert oneself, take active steps, make every preparation; struggle, fight, contend, encounter.*

contentiō, **-ōnis**, f., *struggling, contest, rivalry.*

contestor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *call upon, invoke.*

continēns, **entis**, f., *the continent, the mainland.*

continenter, adv., *continually.*

con-tineō, **ere**, **-tinuī**, **-tentum**, *contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold; bound, surround, occupy;* pres. part. as adj., **continēns**, **-entis**, *continual, incessant.*

continuus, **a**, **um**, *successive, without interruption.*

contrā, 1. adv., *against, in opposition;* 2. prep. w. acc., *opposite, against.*

con-trahō, **ere**, **-trāxī**, **-trāctum**, *collect, gather together, assemble.*

contulī, from **confero**.

con-veniō, **īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *come together, meet, assemble, gather.*

conventus, **ūs**, m., *meeting, assembly; assize.*

conver-tō, **ere**, **-tī**, **-sum**, *turn, change, alter.*

convocō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *call together, call, summon, assemble.*

co-orior, **īrī**, **-ortus sum**, *arise, spring up, break out.*

cōpia, **ae**, f., *supply, abundance, plenty, quantity;* in plur., *forces, troops; resources, stores.*

cōpiōsus, **a**, **um**, *well-supplied, wealthy.*

cōram, adv., *face to face, in person, with one's own eyes.*

cornū, **ūs**, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).

corp-us, **-oris**, n., *body, person.*

Cōrus, **ī**, m., *the north-west wind.*

cotīdiānus, **a**, **um**, *daily.*

cotīdiē, adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, **ae**, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Crassus, **ī**, m., *Publius Crassus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

crēber, **bra**, **brum**, *frequent, numerous, repeated, close together.*

crudēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

culpa, **ae**, f., *fault, blame.*

cum, prep. w. abl., *with, together with.*

cum, conj., *when, whenever, while; as, since; although;* **cum primum**, *as soon as;* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

cunctor, ārī, ātus sum, *hesitate.*

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, eager desire.*

cupidus, a, um, *eager, desirous, fond.*

cup-iō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *be eager.*

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, take care;* with gerundive, *cause to be (done), have (done).*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage.*

custōdia, ae, f., *guard, picket, patrol.*

D

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of.*

dē-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *withdraw, depart.*

decem, *ten.*

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decide, determine; decree, order.*

dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight a decisive battle, decide the issue.*

decimus, a, um, *tenth.*

Decimus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

dēclīvis, e, *sloping.*

dēcrētus, a, um, from **decerno.**

dēcrēvī, from **decerno.**

dē-currō, ere, -currī, (-cucurrī), -cursum, *run down.*

dēdec-us, -oris, n., *disgrace.*

dedī, from **do.**

dēdidī, from **dedo.**

dēditīcius, a, um, *surrendered;* m. as subst., *prisoner.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f., *surrender, submission, capitulation.*

dē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *surrender, give up.*

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring (down); launch; lead (home), marry.*

dēfatīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weary, exhaust, wear out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f., *revolt.*

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *defend, protect.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry, bring, convey; report; give, confer;* in pass. *drift.*

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, give out, be wanting, run short; revolt, forsake, break off.*

dē-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fix, set, fasten.*

deinceps, adv., *in turn, in succession.*

deinde, adv., *then, thereupon, next.*

dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *cast down; carry down, sweep down; disappoint.*

dēlātus, a, um, from **defero.**

dēlēctus, a, um, and **dēlēgī** from **deligo, ere.**

dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, tie, make fast, moor.*

dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick out, choose, select.*

dēlīt-ēscō, ere, -uī, *hide, lurk, lie concealed, lie in wait.*

dē-metō, ere, -messuī, -messum, *cut, reap.*

dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *depart, move away, abandon.*

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, show, explain, state, mention.*

dēmum, adv., *at last, at length.*

dēnī, ae, a, *ten each, in groups of ten.*

dēnsus, a, um, *dense, close, thick.*

dēper-eō, -īre, -iī, *perish, be lost, be destroyed.*

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay down, lay aside, give up, abandon; place, put.*

dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*

dēpositus, a, um, from **depono.**

dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, *beg off, petition against, request (not).*

dēser-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, *desert, abandon, forsake.*

dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātum, *desire, miss, lose.*

dē-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum, *leap down.*

dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, *cease; abandon, give up.*

dēspectus, ūs, m., *view (down).*

dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *give up hope, despair; despair of.*

dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten.*

dēstitī, from **desisto.**

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, *be lacking, be missing, be wanting, fail.*

dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten, intimidate, deter, discourage, prevent.*

dē-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hinder, delay.*

dē-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *take from, snatch from.*

dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss.*

dē-trūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *strip off, remove.*

dētulī, from **defero.**

deus, ī, m., *god.*

dē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come (down).*

dexter, tra, trum, *right.*

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, state, mention; appoint, name.*

dictum, ī, n., *remark, statement.*

diēs, ēī, m. (rarely f.), *day;* **ad diem,** *punctually.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, *differ, be different.*

difficultās, -tātis, f., *difficulty.*

dignitās, -tātis, f., *worth, dignity, honor.*

dīligenter, adv., *carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously.*

dimicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, struggle, contend, engage.*

dimidium, ī, n., *half.*

dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, missum, *send out, despatch; dismiss, send away, disband; abandon, quit.*

dī-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *plunder.*

dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go away, withdraw, depart, move away, disperse;* with **ab,** *leave, abandon, desert.*

discessus, ūs, m., *departure, withdrawal.*

dis-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tear off.*

dis-pār, -paris, *unequal.*

di-spergō, ere, -spersī, -spersum, *scatter, disperse.*

dis-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array.*

dissipō, āre, āvī, ātum, *scatter, disperse, rout.*

distrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *allot, assign, distribute, divide.*

diū, adv., **(diūtius, diūtissimē),** *long, for a long time.*

dīver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *separate, isolate.*

dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine, of the gods.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, grant, allow;* w. **in fugam,** *put;* **operam dare,** *take pains, see to it.*

doc-eō, ēre, -uī, -tum, *teach, inform, show, state.*

dolor, -ōris, m., *grief, pain; annoyance, vexation, resentment.*

domesticus, a, um, *at home;* w. **bellum,** *intestine, civil.*

Domitius, ī, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus,* consul, 54 B.C.

domus, ūs, f., *house, home.*

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hesitate; doubt, have doubts.*

ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead, draw, bring, take; consider, think.*

dum, conj., *while; until.*

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., a leader of the Aedui.

duo, ae, o, *two.*

duodecim, *twelve.*

duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth.*

duodēnī, ae, a, *twelve each, twelve.*

duodēvīgintī, indecl., *eighteen.*

dupl-ex, -icis, *twofold, double.*

duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *double.*

Dūrus, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune with Caesar.

dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide.*

E

ē, see **ex.**

Eburōnes, um, m. plur., *the Eburones*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, lead forth.*

ef-fīciō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *make, cause, produce; bring about, accomplish, bring to pass; complete, finish.*

ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *escape.*

egeō, ēre, uī, *be in need, lack;* pres. part. as adj., **egēns, -entis**, *needy.*

egestās, -ātis, f., *need, poverty, destitution.*

ego, meī, *I.*

ē-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go out, depart, leave, quit; land, disembark.*

ēgregiē, adv., *excellently, well, admirably, strongly.*

ēgregius, a, um, *eminent, marked.*

ēgressus, a, um, from **egredior.**

ēgressus, ūs, m., *landing.*

ē-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *fling out, drive out, cast up;* w. **se**, *rush.*

ējusmodī, *of such a nature, such.*

ē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send out, hurl, cast.*

enim, conj., *for, now.*

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *go, march, pass, proceed, advance.*

eō, adv., *thither, there, to that place, to them (it,* etc.); w. comparatives, *the (more), all the (more).*

eōdem, adv., *to the same place, in the same direction.*

equ-es, -itis, m., *horseman, horse-soldier;* in plur., *cavalry.*

equester, tris, tre, *of cavalry, cavalry.*

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

equus, ī, m., *horse.*

ēreptus, a, um, from **eripio.**

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *take away, destroy.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., *sally, sortie.*

essedārius, ī, m., *charioteer, chariot-fighter.*

essedum, ī, n., or **esseda, ae**, f., *chariot, war-chariot.*

Esubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Esubii*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

et, conj., *and;* **et....et**, *both.... and.*

etiam, conj., *also, further; even, still.*

etsī, conj., *even if, although.*

ē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *turn out, result.*

ēventus, ūs, m., *outcome, result; experience.*

ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call out, summon, invite.*

ex (sometimes **ē** before consonants), prep. w. abl., *from, out of; of; after; in consequence of; in accordance with;* of direction, *on.*

exagitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass.*

exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weigh, test.*

ex-ārdēscō, ere, -ārsī, -ārsum, *blaze forth, become enraged, become incensed.*

ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go out, move away, withdraw, leave, quit.*

ex-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *catch, come upon; take up; succeed, relieve.*

excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rouse, incite.*

ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *cut off, shut out, prevent.*

excursiō, -ōnis, f., *sally, sortie.*

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *excuse;* w. **se**, *apologize.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go out, go forth, leave, proceed.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., *training, exercise, practice.*

exercitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *train, season.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

exiguitās, -tātis, f., *smallness, small extent* or *size; shortness.*

exiguus, a, um, *small, scanty.*

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, believe, consider; estimate, judge.*

expediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *free; get ready*; perf. part. as adj., **expedītus, a, um**, *unencumbered, free, rapid, quick, easy; in light marching order.*

expeditiō, -ōnis, f., *expedition.*

ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out.*

exper-ior, īrī, -tus sum, *try.*

explōrātor, -tōris, m., *scout.*

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *examine, reconnoitre, find out.*

ex-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *display; disembark, land.*

exportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*

expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *storm, take by storm, capture.*

expulsus, a, um, from **expellō**.

ex-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, *spring up, arise, come on.*

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look for, await, wait for; wait to see, wait.*

exstitī, from **exsistō**.

exstō, āre, *stand out, project.*

ex-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *raise, build.*

ex-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *drag out, waste by delay, spin out, fritter away.*

extrēmus, a, um, superl., *farthest, most distant, last, extreme.*

F

faber, brī, m., *workman, engineer.*

facile, adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, e, *easy.*

faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, (pass., **fīō, fierī, factus sum**), *make; do, act; form, build, construct;* w. **proelium**, *fight;* in passive, *take place, come to pass, happen, result.*

factum, ī, n., *deed, act, action.*

facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity, chance, power; supply, abundance.*

fāgus, ī, m., *beech.*

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive, cheat; disappoint.*

falsus, a, um, *false.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle, hook.*

familiāritās, -tātis, f., *intimacy, friendship.*

fās n. indecl., *right* (by divine law).

fēlīciter, adv., *happily, successfully.*

ferāx, ācis, *fertile, fruitful.*

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly, about, practically; generally, for the most part;* w. negatives, *scarcely.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring, carry; endure, take, stand; run, go;* **signa ferre**, *advance;* w. **auxilium**, *lend.*

ferreus, a, um, *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, ī, n., *iron.*

fertilitās, -tātis, f., *fertility, richness.*

ferus, a, um, *wild, fierce, ferocious.*

fidēlis, e, *faithful, loyal.*

fidēs, ēī, f., *faith, pledge, word; faithfulness, devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, allegiance;* **fidem facere**, *give a pledge, gain belief.*

figūra, ae, f., *shape, build.*

fīlius, ī, m., *son.*

fīnis, is, m., *end, limit;* in plur., *borders, territory, land, district.*

fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring, adjacent, bordering;* masc. plur. as subst., *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, pass. of **faciō**, *be made, be done; take place, come to pass, happen, result.*

firmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily.*

firmus, a, um, *strong, powerful.*

flectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *turn.*

fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep, be in tears.*

flō, āre, āvī, ātum, *blow.*

fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*

flūmen, -minis, n., *river.*

fore, fut. infin. of **sum**.

fōrma, ae, f., *shape, form, build.*

fors, forte, f., (other cases wanting), *chance;* in abl., *by chance, perchance, perhaps.*

fortis, e, *brave, courageous.*

fortiter, adv., *bravely, gallantly, stoutly.*

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, chance, good fortune, success;* in plur., *possessions, fortunes, interests.*

fossa, ae, f., *trench, ditch, moat.*

frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break, shatter, wreck; crush.*

fremitus, ūs, m., *din, noise.*

frīg-us, -oris, n., *cold, frost, cold weather.*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead; front.*

frūmentārius, a, um, *of grain;* **res frumentaria**, *supply of corn, grain, provisions.*

frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum, *get grain, forage.*

frūmentum, ī, n., *grain, corn, crops, provisions.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect.*

fuga, ae, f., *flight, rout; escape;* **in fugam convertere, conjicere** or **dare**, *put to flight.*

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee, escape.*

funda, ae, f., *sling.*

fundi-tor, -tōris, m., *slinger.*

fūnis, is, m., *rope, cable; rigging.*

futūrus, a, um, from **sum**.

G

Gāius, ī, or **Cāius, ī**, m., a Roman praenomen.

galea, ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.* 1. The Roman provinces of Gaul, *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *Citerior*, the northern part of Italy; and *Gallia Transalpina* or *Ulterior*, the southeastern part of France. 2. The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium, and part of Holland and Germany. 3. The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided, the *Belgae* and the *Aquitani* holding the other two.

Gallicus, a, um, *of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic.*

gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*

Gallus, ī, m., 1. *a Gaul;* 2. *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, nation.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, family; kind, sort, class.*

Germānia, ae, f., *Germany*, the region east of the Rhine.

Germānicus, a, um, *German, of* or *with the Germans.*

Germānus, ī, m., *a German.*

gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *manage; carry on, wage, undertake; do;* in pass., *take place, go on.*

gladius, ī, m., *sword.*

grātia, ae, f., *favôr, good-will; influence, credit, popularity; gratitude, thanks.*

gravis, e, *heavy; severe, serious.*

gravitās, -tātis, f., *weight.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, severely, bitterly, seriously;* **graviter ferre**, *be annoyed, be offended, feel keenly.*

gubernātor, -tōris, m., *pilot, helmsman.*

gustō, āre, āvī, ātum, *taste, eat.*

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, *have, possess, occupy; keep; hold; treat, regard, consider;* w. **orationem**, *deliver, make.*

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii;* masc. plur. as subst., *the Helvetii*, a tribe of Gaul dwelling in modern Switzerland.

hīberna, ōrum, n. plur., *winter camp, winter-quarters.*

Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*

hīc, haec, hōc, *this; he; the following; the present;* often loosely, *that;* **hōc**, neut. abl. as adv., *in this way, on this account*, and w. comparatives, *the.*

hīc, adv., *here, herein.*

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, *winter, pass the winter.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*

hom-ō, -inis, m. and f., *man, person;* in plur., *people, population, inhabitants.*

hōra, ae, f., *hour* (one-twelfth of the daylight).

horridus, a, um, *horrible, frightful.*

hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.*

hosp-es, -itis, m., *guest, friend.*

hostis, is, m., *enemy.*

hūc, adv., *to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.*

hūmānus, a, um, *civilized, refined.*

humilis, e, *low, shallow.*

humilitās, -tātis, f., *lowness, low build.*

I

ibi, adv., *there.*

Iccius, ī, m., a leader of the Remi.

idcircō, adv., *on that account, for this reason.*

īdem, eadem, idem, *the same; also.*

idōneus, a, um, *suitable, fit, competent, convenient, favorable.*

igitur, *therefore.*

ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *not know, be unacquainted with, have no knowledge of.*

ignōscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *forgive, pardon, overlook*, w. dat.

illātus, a, um, from **infero.**

ille, illa, illud, *that, he.*

illō, adv., *to that point, thither, there.*

Illyricum, ī, n., a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.

impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* in plur., *baggage, baggage-train.*

impediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hinder, obstruct, hamper, interfere with, make difficult* or *impossible, entangle, embarrass;* perf. part. as adj., **impedītus, a, um**, *difficult, impassable, inaccessible, impenetrable.*

im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *incite, induce.*

imperātor, -tōris, m., *commander (in chief).*

imperātum, ī, n., *order, command, bidding.*

imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced, unacquainted*, w. gen.

imperium, ī, n., *command, order; power, supreme power, control, supreme command; rule, supremacy, authority, discipline.*

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *levy upon, demand, require, order to furnish; order, command, rule, issue commands.*

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *obtain, gain one's request, prevail on.*

impetus, ūs, m., *attack, onset, charge; rush, violence, dash.*

implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *beg, entreat, beseech.*

im-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place* or *put* (*on*).

importō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring in, introduce, import.*

imprōvīsus, a, um, *unforeseen;* **de improvīso**, *unexpectedly.*

imprūdēns, -entis, *unsuspecting, off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, ae, f., *ignorance, thoughtlessness, indiscretion.*

īmus, a, um, superlative of **inferus**.

in, prep. (1) w. abl., *in, at, within, on; among, in the country of;* (2) w. acc., *into, to; towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to.*

inānis, e, *empty.*

incendium, ī, n., *fire.*

in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set on fire, burn.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain, untrustworthy, confused.*

in-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *begin.*

incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on, drive forward, impel, set in motion; arouse, excite;* perf. part. w. **equus**, *at full speed.*

incōgnitus, a, um, *unknown.*

incol-ō, ere, -uī, *inhabit, dwell, live.*

incolumis, e, *safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss.*

incommodum, ī, n., *misfortune, disaster, loss, damage.*

incrēdibilis, e, *incredible, extraordinary.*

increpitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reproach, upbraid, taunt.*

incursiō, -ōnis, f., *raid, inroad, invasion.*

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *blame, attack, censure.*

inde, adv., *from that place* or *country, thence; then, next.*

ind-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *put on.*

Indūtiomārus, ī, m., a chief of the Treveri.

in-eō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**) **-itum**, *enter upon;* w. **consilium**, *adopt, form;* w. words of time, *begin.*

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum, *bring in, put in* or *upon; cause, inflict, inspire, rouse;* w. **bellum**, *make, wage* (offensive); w. **signa**, *advance;* w. **causam**, *advance, allege.*

īnferus, a, um, *low;* compar. **īnferior**, *lower;* superl. **īnfimus** or **īmus**, *lowest, at the foot* or *base.*

in-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *stain.*

īnfimus, a, um, superl. of **inferus**.

īnfīnītus, a, um, *endless, boundless, unlimited, vast.*

īnfīrmitās, -tātis, f., *weakness; fickleness, inconstancy.*

īnfīrmus, a, **um**, *weak, unsound.*

in-fluō, ere -flūxī, -fluxum, *flow, empty.*

īnfra, adv., *below, farther down.*

ingēns, entis, *huge, vast.*

in-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *enter, penetrate.*

inimīcus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile;* masc. as subst., *enemy.*

inīquus, a, um, *uneven, unfavorable; unfair, unjust.*

initium, ī, n., *beginning; frontier, borders.*

initus, a, um, from **ineo**.

in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *put in; inspire, instil.*

injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, harm, violence, outrage.*

in-nāscor, ī, -nātus sum, *be born in, spring up in.*

in-nītor, ī, -nīsus or **-nīxus sum**, *lean on.*

inopia, ae, f., *want, scarcity, lack, deficiency.*

inopīnāns, -antis, *not expecting, unprepared, off one's guard.*

inquam, inquit, defective verb, *say.*

īnscīēns, entis, *not knowing, being unaware.*

īnscientia, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of acquaintance (with).*

īnscius, a, um, *ignorant, unaware.*

in-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

in-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *insert.*

īnsidiae, **ārum**, f. plur., *ambush, treachery.*

īnsīgnis, **e**, *notable*; n. as subst., **īnsīgne**, **is**, *badge.*

īnsinuō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *insinuate*; w. **se**, *work one's way in.*

īn-sistō, **ere**, **-stitī**, *stand, keep one's footing, get a foothold.*

īnstābilis, **e**, *unsteady, changeable, irregular.*

īnstit-uō, **ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, *undertake, arrange, begin, set to, set about; adopt, decide on; equip, get ready; draw up.*

īnstitūtum, **ī**, n., *custom, practice.*

īn-stō, **āre**, **-stitī**, **-stātum**, *press forward; threaten.*

īn-struō, **ere**, **-strūxī**, **-strūctum**, *draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.*

īnsuē-faciō, **ere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum**, *train.*

īnsuētus, **a**, **um**, *unaccustomed.*

īnsula, **ae**, f., *island.*

integer, **gra**, **grum**, *untouched, fresh, unwearied.*

intel-legō, **ere**, **-lēxī**, **-lēctum**, *understand, be aware, perceive, observe, see, know, learn.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among*; **inter se**, *one another, to* or *with one another.*

inter-cēdō, **ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, *come, arise* or *be between.*

inter-clūdō, **ere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum**, *cut off.*

inter-dīcō, **ere**, **-dīxī**, **-dictum**, *forbid, warn.*

interea, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interest, from **intersum.**

inter-ficiō, **ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, *slay, put to death, kill.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, comparative adj., *inner, interior;* plur., *those living in the interior.*

inter-mittō, **ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, *leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue, postpone, cease, neglect; let pass,* in pass., *go by, elapse; put between,* in pass., *intervene.*

interneciō, **-ōnis**, f., *destruction, extermination.*

inter-pōnō, **ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, *introduce, interpose,* in pass., *intervene; pledge.*

inter-scindō, **ere**, **-scidī**, **-scissum**, *break down, destroy.*

inter-sum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, *be between, be engaged in, take part in*; as impersonal verb, **interest**, *it is of importance, it concerns.*

intervāllum, **ī**, n., *interval, distance.*

interventus, **ūs**, m., *coming on.*

intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*

intrō-dūcō, **ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, *lead in, bring in.*

introitus, **ūs**, m., *entrance, approach.*

intrōrsus, adv., *within.*

intulī, from **infero.**

inūsitātus, **a**, **um**, *unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar, unwonted.*

inūtilis, **e**, *useless, unserviceable, unsuitable.*

in-veniō, **īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *come upon, find; learn.*

invictus, **a**, **um**, *unconquered, invincible.*

invītō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *invite, induce.*

ipse, **a**, **um**, *himself, he himself, itself*, etc.; *very.*

ir-rīdeō, **ēre**, **-rīsī**, **-rīsum**, *ridicule, jeer at.*

is, **ea**, **id**, *that; he, she, it, they*; w. rel., *the; such*; abl. **eō** as adv., *so much, the, on that account.*

ita, adv., *so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.*

Itália, **ae**, f., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *therefore, so, accordingly.*

item, adv., *likewise, also, in the same way.*

iter, **itineris**, n., *route, march, road, journey;* **magnum iter**, *a forced march;* **iter facere**, *to march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius, adj. with **portus**, a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.

J

jaceō, ēre, uī, itum, *lie, be fallen.*

jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up.*

jam, adv., *now, at length, already;* w. negatives, *any more, longer.*

jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, *order, bid, command, direct.*

jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *judge, decide, consider, think.*

jugum, ī, n., *yoke.*

jūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden.*

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join, unite.*

Jūra, ae, m., a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.

jūs, jūris, n., *right, rights, law.*

jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n., *oath.*

jūstus, a, um, *just, fair, legitimate.*

jūxtā, adv., *near, close by.*

L

L., an abbreviation for **Lucius.**

Labērius, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune with Caesar.

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, hardship, labor, exertion.*

lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *slip; err, do wrong, fall away, go astray.*

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *toil; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.*

labrum, ī, n., *lip.*

lāc, lactis, n., *milk.*

lacess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *provoke, harass, attack, assail.*

lap-is, -idis, m., *stone.*

lassitūd-ō, -dinis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*

lātē, adv., *widely, far, far afield.*

latēō, ēre, uī, *lurk, lie concealed, be in ambush.*

lātitūd-ō, -dinis, f., *breadth, width.*

lat-us, -eris, n., *side, flank.*

lātus, a, um, from **fero.**

lātus, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive.*

laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, commend;* gerundive **laudandus** as adj., *praiseworthy.*

laxō, āre, āvī, ātum, *loosen, extend, open out.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*

lēgātus, ī, m., *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant* (general), an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*, a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.

legiōnārius, a, um, *of a legion, legionary.*

lēnis, e, *gentle, light.*

lēniter, adv., *gently, with little vigor.*

lep-us, -oris, m., *hare.*

levis, e, *light.*

līber, era, erum, *free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed.*

līberāliter, adv., *generously, graciously, kindly.*

līberē, adv., *freely, without check* or *restraint.*

līberī, ōrum, m. plur., *children.*

līberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free, set free.*

lībertās, -tātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*

Liger, -eris, m., the river *Loire*, in the central part of Gaul.

lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language.*

lingula, ae, f., *tongue of land, headland.*

līs, lītis, f., *lawsuit; damages.*

littera, ae, f., *letter, character;* in plur., *letter, despatches.*

līt-us, -oris, n., *shore.*

locus, ī, m.; in plur., **loca, ōrum**, n.; *place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country;* in plur., *ground, district, region, country, parts.*

locūtus, a, um, from **loquor.**

longē, adv., *far; long.*

longinquus, a, um, *distant, remote.*

longitūdō, -dinis, f., *length.*

longurius, ī, m., *long pole.*

longus, a, um, *long;* **navis longa**, *war-ship, galley.*

loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak.*

Lūcius, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Lugotor-īx, -igis, m., a Briton of rank.

lūna, ae, f., *moon.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, dawn;* **prima lux**, *daybreak, dawn.*

M

M., an abbreviation for **Marcus.**

māchinātiō, -ōnis, f., *machine, engine.*

magis, comparative adv., (see **magnopere**), *more, rather.*

māgnitūdō, -dinis, f., *greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.*

māgnopere, adv. (**magis, māximē**), *greatly, very, strongly, earnestly.*

māgnus, a, um (**mājor, māximus**), *great, large; loud; serious, extensive;* **māgnī**, as adv., *highly, greatly.*

mājor, comparative of **māgnus**; in m. plur. as subst., *elders, ancestors, fathers.*

malacia, ae, f., *calm, lull.*

maleficium, ī, n., *mischief, outrage, harm, molesting.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*

mālus, ī, m., *mast.*

mandātum, ī, n., *order, command, mandate; message.*

mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, *order, instruct; entrust, give up, commit, betake.*

Mandubracius, ī, m., a Briton of high rank among the Trinobantes.

mānē, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *stay, remain, abide.*

manipulus, ī, m., *maniple, company* (one-third of a cohort).

manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force;* **manū**, *by force.*

mare, maris, n., *sea.*

maritimus, a, um, *on* or *of the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval.*

māteria, ae, f., *timber, wood, material.*

mātūrē, adv. (**mātūrius, mātūrrimē**), *early, soon.*

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten, make haste.*

mātūrus, a, um, *early.*

māximē, superlative adv. (see **magnopere**), *very greatly, very much, chiefly, most, especially.*

māximus, a, um, superlative of **magnus.**

mediocris, e, *moderate.*

mediterrāneus, a, um, *inland, central, interior.*

medius, a, um, *middle, central; intermediate;* generally rendered by *middle* or *half-way.*

membrum, ī, n., *limb.*

memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition.*

Menapiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Menapii*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

mēnsūra, ae, f., *measure.*

mercātor, -tōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

meridiānus, a, um, *of midday, of noon.*

meridiēs, ēī, m., *midday, noon; the south.*

meritum, ī, n., *service, merit, desert.*

metō, ere, messuī, messum, *reap, cut grain.*

metus, ūs, m., *fear.*

meus, a, um, *my, mine.*

mīl-es, -itis, m., *soldier, man;* as collective, *the soldiers, soldiery.*

mīlitāris, e, *military, of war.*

mīlle, indeclinable adj.; in plur., **mīlia, ium**, n.; *thousand.*

minimē, adv., superlative of **parum**, *by no means, least.*

minor, comparative of **parvus**.

min-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *lessen, diminish.*

minus, adv., comparative of **parum**, *less; not very, not so well; not.*

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send, despatch; hurl, throw.*

mōbilis, e, *fickle, changeable.*

mōbilitās, -tātis, f., *quickness, activity; unstable character.*

mōbiliter, adv., *easily.*

moderor, ārī, ātus sum, *manage, check, control.*

modo, adv., *only, merely,*

modus, ī, m., *manner, kind, sort, fashion, style, character.*

moenia, ium, n. plur., *walls, fortifications.*

molestē, adv., *greviously;* **moleste ferre**, *to be annoyed, be vexed, be irritated.*

mollis, e, *soft; smooth, level.*

Mona, ae, f., an island in the Irish channel.

moneō, ēre, nī, itum, *warn, advise, remind, urge.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain; mountain range.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

Morinī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Morini*, a tribe in the north of Gaul.

moror, ārī, ātus sum, *delay, wait, stay, linger; hinder, retard.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mōs, mōris, m., *manner, custom, way;* in plur., *habits, character.*

Mosa, ae, m., the *Meuse*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

mōtus, ūs, m., *movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt.*

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move, shift.*

mox, adv., *soon.*

muli-er, -eris, f., *woman.*

multitū-dō, -dinis, f., *great number, large body, multitude; number, amount; the common people.*

multum, adv. (**plūs, plūrimum**), *much, often, very.*

multus, a, um (**plūs, plūrimus**), *much;* in plur., *many;* **multo** as adv., *much, far.*

mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fortify, entrench, protect, defend, secure.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification, entrenchment; fortifying, construction; fortified works, defences.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

N

nactus, a, um, from **nanciscor**.

nam, conj., *for, now.*

namque, conj., *for.*

nancīscor, ī, nactus or **nanctus sum**, *find, get, come upon, obtain, secure.*

nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born; arise;* of metals, *be found.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *race, people, tribe, nation.*

nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character, formation.*

nātus, a, um, from **nascor**.

nātus, ūs, m., *birth.*

nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

nauticus, a, um, *naval, nautical.*

nāvālis, e, *naval, of ships.*

nāvicula, ae, f., *small boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *sailing, navigation, voyage.*

nāvigium, ī, n., *ship, vessel.*

nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sail.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship, boat, vessel;* **navis longa**, *warship;* **navis oneraria**, *transport.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest;* w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., *not to;* w. verbs of fearing, *that, lest.*

nē, adv., *not;* **ne..quidem**, *not even.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, in indirect questions, *whether.*

nec, see **neque**.

necessārius, a, um, *necessary, indispensable;* **necessāriō**, abl. as adv., *of necessity, unavoidably, perforce.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable.*

necō, āre, āvī, ātum, *kill, put to death, murder.*

neg-legō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *neglect, slight, disregard.*

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deny, say .. not; refuse.*

negōtium, ī, n., *business, enterprise, work; task, trouble, difficulty.*

nēmō (nōminis), m., gen. and abl. not in use, *no one, nobody.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means.*

neque, or sometimes **nec** before consonants, adv. and conj., *and not, nor;* when repeated, *neither .. nor.*

Nervīī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

neu, see **neve.**

neuter, tra, trum, *neither;* in plur., *neither side.*

nēve or **neu**, *or not, and that not, and not to, nor.*

nihil, n. indecl. *nothing;* acc. as adv., *not at all.*

nihilum, ī, n., *nothing;* **nihilō**, abl. as adv., *none, no,* w. comparatives.

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

nōbilis, e, *noble, of high birth*, as subst., *a man of rank; well-known, famous.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, f., *high birth, rank; the nobility, the nobles.*

noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *harm, injure, do harm to, molest,* w. dat.

noctū, abl. as adv., *by night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, be reluctant, not wish, not want.*

nōmen, -minis, n., *name.*

nōminātim, adv., *by name.*

nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *name, call, mention.*

nōn, adv., *not, no.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*

nōnus, a, um, *ninth.*

nōs, plur. of **ego.**

nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn;* in perf., *know;* part. **nōtus, a, um**, *known, well-known, familiar.*

noster, tra, trum, *our;* m. plur. as subst., *our men, troops* or *forces.*

novem, *nine.*

Noviodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Suessiones.

novitās, -tātis, f., *novelty, strangeness.*

novus, a, um, *new, fresh, novel, strange;* in superlative, *latest, last, rear;* **novae res**, *political change, change of government, revolution.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum, *lay bare, leave defenceless.*

nūllus, a, um, *no, none;* in gen. dat. and abl. supplies cases of **nemō**, *no one.*

numerus, ī, m., *number; amount.*

Numida, ae, m., *Numidian*, from the north coast of Africa.

nummus, ī, m., *coin, money.*

numquam, adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, report, bring word, tell.*

nūntius, ī, m., *messenger, news, report, message, tidings.*

nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*

nūtus, ūs, m., *nod, signal.*

O

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of, for.*

ob-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *place in the way, oppose;* pass., *lie opposite.*

ob-ses, -sidis, m., *hostage.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade; pressure.*

obstinātē, adv., *steadily, firmly, persistently.*

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *submit to, obey*, w. dat.

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold, possess, occupy, maintain.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting;* **solis occasus**, *sunset, the west.*

oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *fall; set.*

oc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *slay, kill.*

occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hide, conceal.*

occultus, a, um, *concealed, secret;* **in occulto**, *in secret, in hiding.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation.*

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize, get possession of; occupy, engage.*

oc-currō, ere, -currī (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum**, *fall in with, meet, come upon, find*, w. dat.

Ōceanus, ī, m., (often with **mare**), *the Ocean.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred.*

octo, *eight.*

octōdecim, *eighteen.*

octōgintā, *eighty.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

officium, ī, n., *service, duty, allegiance;* **in officio**, *loyal.*

omnīnō, adv., *altogether, in all;* w. negatives, *at all.*

omnis, e, *all, every, whole.*

onerārius, a, um, *for burdens;* **navis oneraria**, *a transport.*

onerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *load.*

on-us, -eris, n., *burden, weight, bulk; cargo, freight.*

opera, ae, f., *work, exertion, trouble, pains;* **operam dare**, *take pains, see to it, do one's best.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, impression, idea; expectation, belief.*

oportet, ēre, oportuit, impersonal verb, *it behoves, it is necessary;* render freely by *ought.*

oppidānus, a, um, *of a town;* m. plur. as subst., *townspeople.*

oppidum, ī, n., *town.*

opportūnē, *opportunely, conveniently.*

opportūnitās, -tātis, f., *convenience, advantage.*

opportūnus, a, um, *opportune, advantageous, favorable*,

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *overwhelm, crush, surprise; burden, weigh down, encumber.*

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault, attack.*

oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attack, assault, storm.*

(**ops**), **opis**, f., *help, aid.*

optimē, adv., superlative of **bene**, *well, excellently.*

optimus, a, um, superlative of **bonus**, *best.*

op-us, -eris, n., *work, fortification, fortifying, structure; trade, handicraft;* **opere** w. **munitus**, *by art.*

ōra, ae, f., *shore, coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, address, words.*

ōrātor, -tōris, m., *ambassador.*

orbis, is, f , *circle.*

ōr-dō, -dinis, m., *rank, line; arrangement, order.*

orior, īrī, ortus sum, *rise, arise, spring, be born;* part. **oriens, -entis**, as adj., *rising;* **oriens sol**, *sunrise, the east.*

ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *equip, supply, furnish.*

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pray, beg, entreat, beseech.*

ortus, a, um, from **orior.**

ostend-ō, ere, -dī, -tum, *show, point out, explain, declare; display.*

P

P., an abbreviation for **Publius.**

pābulātor, -tōris, m., *forager.*

pābulor, ārī, ātus sum, *forage.*

pābulum, ī, n., *fodder, forage.*

pācō, āre, āvī, ātum, *tranquillize, subdue, reduce.*

paene, adv., *almost.*

pagus, ī, m., *district, canton, clan.*

pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

pandō, ere, pandī, passum, *spread out, outstretch.*

pār, paris, *equal, like, the same; a match.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*

pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, *obey, submit, be obedient, be submissive*, w. dat.

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare, equip, get ready, arrange; procure, get, acquire;* w. **bellum**, *prepare for war;* part. **parātus, a, um**, as adj., *ready, prepared.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, section; quarter, direction, side.*

partim, adv., *partly.*

parvulus, a, um, *very small, slight, trifling.*

passim, adv., *in all directions.*

passus, a, um, from **pando** or from **patior.**

passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet); one thousand paces made one mile.

pater, -tris, m., *father.*

patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer, allow, permit; bear, endure, withstand, cope with.*

patrius, a, um, *of one's fathers, ancestral.*

paucī, ae, a (sing. not in Caesar), *few, but few.*

paucitās, -tātis, f., *small number.*

paulātim, adv., *gradually, by degrees.*

paulisper, adv., *for a short time.*

paulō, adv., *a little, slightly, somewhat.*

paulum, adv., *a little, slightly.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

pec-us, -oris, n., *cattle; flesh, meat.*

ped-es, -itis, m., *foot-soldier;* in plur., *infantry.*

pedester, tris, tre, *on foot, on* or *by land; of infantry.*

peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*

Pedius, ī, m., *Quintus Pedius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

pellis, is, f., *skin, hide.*

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, dislodge, repulse, defeat, put to flight, rout.*

pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum, *weigh; pay.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of.*

per-agō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *finish, bring to an end.*

per-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *get; hear, listen to.*

percontātiō, -ōnis, f., *inquiry.*

per-currō, ere, -currī (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum**, *run along.*

per-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *carry* or *bring over, bring; win over.*

per-eō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itum**, *perish, be killed.*

perequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ride through, ride* or *drive about.*

perexiguus, a, um, *very small.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *endure, submit to; carry, report.*

per-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *finish, complete.*

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*

perfugium, ī, n., *refuge, place of refuge.*

perīculōsus, a, um, *dangerous.*

perīculum, ī, n., *danger, risk, peril; test, trial, attempt.*

perlātus, a, um, from **perfero.**

per-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *continue, remain, abide, hold fast.*

per-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *give up, yield, entrust, leave; allow, grant permission, permit.*

per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move, influence, induce; alarm.*

perpaucī, ae, a, (*a*) *very few.*

perpetuus, a, um, *continuous, unbroken;* **in perpetuum**, *for ever.*

per-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through, force one's way.*

per-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *pursue, follow up; attack;* w. **bello**, *make war on.*

per-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.*

per-suādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade, induce*, w. dat.

perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *terrify, frighten, alarm, dismay, unnerve;* in pass., *be panic-stricken.*

per-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *extend, stretch; tend; concern, relate, belong to.*

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *alarm, confusion, panic.*

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *throw into confusion, disconcert, disturb, alarm;* in pass., *be at a loss.*

per-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come, reach, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* **pedibus**, *on foot, by land;* **pedem referre**, *to fall back, retire, retreat.*

pet-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.*

Pictones, um, m. plur., *the Pictones*, a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

pīlum, ī, n., *javelin, spear.*

Pīrūstae, ārum, m. plur., *the Pirustae*, a tribe in Illyricum.

plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain, level space.*

plānus, a, um, *level, flat, evenly sheltering.*

plēbēs, or **plēbs, plēbis**, f., *the common people, the masses.*

plēnus, a, um, *full.*

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, *the most, the majority, the greater number.*

plērumque, adv., *generally, usually, in most cases.*

plumbum, ī, n., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrimum, adv., *most, very much.*

plūrimus, a, um, superlative of **multus**, *most, very many.*

plūs, plūris, comparative of **multus**, *more;* in plur., *several, many.*

poena, ae, f., *penalty, punishment.*

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise, make a promise, undertake.*

pond-us, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place, set, station; pitch; lay down;* w. **castra**, *pitch;* in pass., *be situated, be dependent.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

poposcī, from **posco.**

populor, ārī, ātus sum, *ravage, lay waste, devastate.*

populus, ī, m., *people, nation.*

porta, ae, f., *gate.*

portō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry, bring, convey.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, ere, poposcī, *ask for, demand.*

positus, a, um, from **pono.**

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *possession, occupation.*

pos-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *possess, hold.*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can, be possible; be powerful* or *strong, have weight* or *influence.*

post, 1. adv., *afterwards, after;* 2. prep. w. acc., *after, behind.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards.*

posteāquam, conj., *after, when.*

posterus, a, um, *next, following.*

post-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *postpone, set aside, disregard.*

postquam, conj., *after, when.*

postrīdiē, adv., *the next day, on the morrow.*

postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, demand, require.*

potēns, entis, partic. of **possum** as adj., *powerful, influential.*

potestās, -tātis, f., *power, control; opportunity.*

potior, īrī, itus sum, *gain possession of.*

potuī, from **possum.**

praeacūtus, a, um, *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

prae-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *surpass.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, *headlong; abrupt, steep.*

praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fling, hurl.*

prae-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *close, barricade,*

praeda, ae, f., *plunder, booty.*

praedicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, proclaim, assert.*

praedor, ārī, ātus sum, *plunder, get plunder, pillage.*

praefectus, ī, m., *officer, commander* (especially of cavalry), *prefect.*

prae-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put* or *set over, place in command of, give charge of,* w. acc. and dat.

prae-fīgō, ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fix before, place at the edge.*

prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in advance, send on before* or *ahead, send forward.*

praeparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare* or *get ready beforehand.*

prae-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break off.*

prae-scrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *prescribe, give directions.*

praesēns, -entis, partic. of **praesum,** *present.*

praesidium, ī, n., *guard, garrison, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.*

prae stō, āre, -stitī, -stitum or **-stātum,** *exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior;* **praestat,** impersonal, *it is better.*

prae-sum, esse, -fuī, *be over, be at head of, have command of; be in charge of, superintend,* w. dat.

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, past; except, besides.*

praeterea, adv., *besides, moreover.*

precēs, um, f., (sing. defective and not found in Caesar), *prayers, entreaties.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press, press hard; harass, oppress.*

(prex), precis, f., see **preces.**

prīdiē, adv., *the day before, on the previous day.*

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

prīmum, adv., *first, in the first place;* **cum** or **ubi primum,** *as soon as;* **quam primum,** *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, superlative of **prior,** *first, foremost, in the van;* **in primis,** *especially, particularly.*

prīn-ceps, -cipis, m., *leading man, leader, chief.*

prīncipātus, ūs, m., *leadership, chief position, first place, lead, supremacy.*

prior, ius, comparative, *former, earlier.*

prīstinus, a, um, *former, previous; of former days, old-time.*

prius, comparative adv., *earlier, sooner;* **prius . . . quam,** *before,* w. negatives, *until.*

priusquam, conj., *before.*

prīvātim, adv., *individually, as private individuals.*

prīvātus, a, um, *private.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in accordance with; in proportion to; in view of.*

prō-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance.*

procul, adv., *at a distance.*

prō-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, *lie down, fall, sink down.*

prō-currō, ere, -cucurrī (**-currī**), **-cursum,** *run* or *rush forward, rush out, charge.*

prō-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give forth; hand down; betray.*

prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth* or *out; prolong, protract.*

proelior, ārī, ātus sum, *fight.*

proelium, ī, n., *battle, engagement, fighting, fight.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

profectus, a, um, from **proficiscor.**

pro-ficīscor, ī, -fectus sum, *set out, depart, start, go, proceed.*

prōflīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rout, put to flight.*

pro-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *flee, escape, make one's escape.*

prō gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go forward, advance, proceed, go.*

prohibeō, ere, uī, itum, *restrain, keep, prevent, hinder, check; cut off; protect.*

prō-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw down* or *away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.*

prō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let grow;* part. **promissus, a, um**, as adj., *long, flowing.*

prō-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *move forward, advance.*

prōmuntūrium, ī, n., *headland, promontory.*

prope, adv. (**propius, proximē**), *near; nearly, almost, about.*

prō-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive off, repel, dislodge.*

propinquitās, -tātis, f., *nearness.*

propinquus, a, um, *near, close;* m. as subst., *relative, kinsman.*

propior, ius, comparative, *nearer;* see **proximus.**

propius, adv., see **prope.**

prō-pōnō, ere, posuī, -positum, *set forth, display.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of.*

propterea, adv., *on this account, for this reason;* **propterea quod**, *because.*

prōpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight in defence, rush out to fight.*

prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off, repel, keep at bay.*

prō-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *pursue, follow; dismiss, address.*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight.*

prō-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *provide (for), make provision, take precautions, take care.*

prōtinus, adv., *at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off (in confusion), dislodge.*

prō-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry forward.*

prō-videō, ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *provide (for), secure, procure, make provision.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province;* especially '*the province*' of Gallia Transalpina.

prōvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush forth, rush out, dart forth.*

proximē, adv., superlative of **prope**, *last, most recently, lately.*

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next; last, recent;* see **propior.**

pūblicus, a, um, *public, official, of the state* or *people;* **res pūblica**, see **respublica.**

Pūblius, ī, m., *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.

puer, erī, m., *boy, child.*

pūgna, ae, f., *fight, fighting, battle.*

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight;* in pass., **pugnātur**, impersonally, *the battle goes on*, freely (*they*) *fight.*

pulsus, a, um, from **pellō.**

pulv-is, -eris, m., *dust, cloud of dust.*

putō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, believe, hold, consider, suppose.*

Q.

Q., an abbreviation for **Quintus.**

quā, adv., *where, by which road.*

quadrāgintā, *forty.*

quadringentī, ae, a, *four hundred.*

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask, enquire.*

quaestor, -tōris, m., *quaestor*, the officer in charge of the finances of a province or army.

quam, adv., *how;* w. comparatives, *than;* w. superlatives, *as ....as possible.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever.*

quantus, a, um, *how great, what (great), how much; as great as, as much as, as.*

quārtus, a, um, *fourth.*

quattuor, *four.*

-que, enclitic conjunction, *and.*

queror, ī, questus sum, *complain.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; he who;* as co-ordinating relative, *this, he;* after **īdem**, *as.*

quī, quae, quŏd, interrogative adj., *what, which.*

quī, qua, quod, indefinite adj. or rarely pron., *some, any; anyone.*

quicquam, from **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever, whichever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or **quoddam**, *a certain (one).*

quidem, adv., *certainly, indeed,* **ne . . . quidem**, *not even.*

quīn, conj., *but that, so that not;* often best rendered by *from*, w. gerund in *-ing.*

quīndecim, *fifteen.*

quīngentī, ae, a, *five hundred.*

quīnquāgintā, *fifty.*

quīnque, *five.*

quīntus, a, um, *fifth.*

Quīntus, ī, m., *Quintus*, a Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who; what.*

quis, qua, quid, indefinite pron., *any one, anything.*

quisquam, quidquam or **quicquam**, *any one, anything, any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, *each, each one.*

quō, abl. of **quī**, as conj., *that, in order that.*

quō, abl. of **quī**, as adv., *by how much*, w. comparatives, *the;* for **quo minus** see **quominus.**

quō, relative adv., *whither, where, to, at* or *into which.*

quoad, conj., *until.*

quod, conj., *because, that, in that; on the ground that; the fact that.*

quōminus or **quō minus**, conj., *so that not;* freely rendered by *from.*

quoniam, conj., *since, as, whereas.*

quoque, conj., *also, too, as well.*

quotannīs, adv., *yearly, every year.*

R

rā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, *shave.*

rapiditās, -tātis, f., *swiftness.*

rārus, a, um, *scattered, few, in scattered* or *detached groups, in small bodies.*

rāsus, a, um, from **rado.**

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *method, system, plan, way, arrangement, character.*

rebelliō, -ōnis, f., *renewal of war.*

recēns, -entis, *new, recent; fresh.*

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat.*

recipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *regain, recover, get back; receive, admit;* **se recipere**, (1) *recover oneself, rally, recover,* (2) *retreat, fall back, withdraw, betake oneself, return.*

recuperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *regain, recover.*

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, object, protest.*

rēda, ae, f., *wagon.*

redāctus, a, um, from **redigo.**

red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, return, restore.*

red-eō, īre, -iī, (-īvī), -itum, *go back, come back, return.*

red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *reduce, bring.*

redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew, restore, revive.*

reditus, ūs, m., *return, returning.*

re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back, withdraw.*

referō, referre, rettulī (or **retulī**), **relātum**, *carry back; report, announce;* **pedem referre**, *retreat, fall back.*

re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *repair, refit.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district, part, country.*

rēgnum, ī, n., *royal power, sovereignty, kingdom.*

re-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw* or *hurl back, drive back; throw aside, drop.*

relictus, a, um, from **relinquo.**

religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious obligation* or *belief* or *scruple.*

re-linquō, ere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave, leave behind; abandon, give up;* in pass., *remain.*

reliquus, a, um, *remaining, other, left, further;* generally to be rendered by *the rest of.*

re-maneō, ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *remain, remain behind, stay.*

rēm-ex, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi*, a tribe in northern Gaul.

rēmigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *row.*

remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *move back, go back, return, retire.*

re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back; relax;* part. **remissus, a, um**, as adj., *mild, not severe.*

re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, send away; withdraw, draw away.*

Rēmus, ī, m., *a Reman, one of the Remi*, a tribe in northern Gaul.

rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *report, bring (back) word.*

re-pellō, ere, reppulī, -pulsum, *drive back, beat off, repulse, defeat.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, a, um, *sudden, hasty.*

re-periō, ere, repperī, -pertum, *find, find out, discover.*

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry back, take back.*

repulsus, a, um, *from* **repello.**

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, action;* the context will generally suggest a more exact rendering.

re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, *break down, destroy.*

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, *resist, withstand, oppose, hold one's ground*, make or *offer resistance*, w. dat.

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, make answer, reply.*

rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, f., *the state, the country, the commonwealth, public affairs* or *interests;* often written as two words.

restitī from **resisto.**

restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *restore, rebuild, renew.*

re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hold; keep, maintain.*

re-trahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *bring back (by force).*

rever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum (chiefly in perf. tenses), **rever-tor, ī, -sus sum** (chiefly in pres. tenses), *return, come back.*

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recall, call back.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

rīpa, ae, f., *bank.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, invite, ask for, request.*

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;* m. as subst., *a Roman.*

rota, ae, f., *wheel.*

Rūfus, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rūmor, -ōris, n., *rumor, report.*

rūrsus, adv., *again, back again.*

S

Sabīnus, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sabis, is, m., *the Sabis*, now *Sambre*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

saepe, adv. (**saepius, saepissimē**), *often, repeatedly.*

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, ī, m., *archer.*

sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare; place of safety.*

Santonī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Santoni*, a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.

sānus, a, um, *sound, sane;* **pro sano**, *like a discreet man, sensibly, prudently.*

sarcina, ae, f., in Caesar always in plur., *pack, kit-bag,* (*personal*) *baggage.*

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably;* often as subst., *enough, sufficient.*

satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *do enough, do one's duty; make amends* or *reparation, satisfy, apologize.*

saxum, ī, n., *stone, rock.*

scapha, ae, f., *skiff, small boat.*

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge.*

sciō, īre, īvī, ītum, *know.*

scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write.*

scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*

sēcius, see **secus.**

secundum, prep. w. acc., *along.*

secundus, a, um, *second; favorable, successful.*

secus, adv. (comp. **sēcius**), *otherwise;* **nihilo secius**, *nonetheless.*

secūtus, a, um, from **sequor.**

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdēs, is, f., *seat; abode, settlement.*

Segontiācī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Segontiaci*, a tribe in Britain.

Segov-ax, -actis, m., a king ruling in Kent.

sēmita, ae, f., *path, by-path.*

senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

sententia, ae, f., *opinion, view.*

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *feel, perceive.*

septem, *seven.*

septentriō, -ōnis, m. (chiefly in plur.), *the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear;* hence *the north.*

septimus, a, um, *seventh.*

septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā, *seventy.*

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sequani*, a tribe in central Gaul.

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow, pursue; attach oneself to.*

serō, ere, sēvī, satum, *sow.*

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery, bondage, subjection.*

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep, hold, maintain; watch.*

sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*

sēsē, for **se**, from **sui.**

sēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call aside, take aside.*

sex, *six.*

sexāgintā, *sixty.*

sī, conj., *if, even if; in case, to see whether.*

sīc, adv., *thus, in this way; so, in such a way; as follows.*

siccitās, -tātis, f., *drying up, dryness, drought.*

signifer, crī, m., *standard-bearer.*

significō, āre, āvī, ātum, *indicate, intimate.*

signum, ī, n., *signal, standard;* **signa ferre** or **inferre**, *to advance.*

Silius, ī, m., *Titus Silius*, one of Caesar's officers.

silva, ae, f., *wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, *wooded.*

simul, adv., *at the same time;* **simul atque** (or sometimes **simul** alone), *as soon as.*

simulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pretend.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv., *singly, individually, one by one.*

singulāris, e, *single, one by one; extraordinary, remarkable.*

singulī, ae, a, *one each, one at a time, one by one, singly, several, one.*

sinister, tra, trum, *left;* fem. **sinistra** as subst., *left hand* (sc. **manus**).

sīquidem, conj., *since.*

situs, ūs, m., *position, situation.*

socius, ī, m., *ally.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun;* **oriens sol**, *the east;* **occidens sol**, *the west.*

sōlitūdō, -dinis, f., *solitude.*

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *stir up, incite, urge, importune, tamper with, try to win over.*

sōlum, adv., *only.*

sōlus, a, um, *alone, only.*

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *loose;* with or without **naves**, *weigh anchor, set sail.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, extent; distance, interval; pause, time.*

speciēs, ēī, f., *appearance, form, sight.*

spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look, face, slope, lie.*

speculātor, -tōris, m., *spy.*

speculātōrius, a, um, *for spying, reconnoitring, scouting.*

spēs, eī, f., *hope.*

spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip, rob, despoil.*

stabilitās, -tātis, f., *steadiness.*

statim, adv., *at once.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., *guard, sentry, outpost, picket.*

stat-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *decide, determine, resolve.*

strepitus, ūs, m., *noise, din, clatter, confusion.*

studeō, ēre, uī, *strive, be eager for, be bent upon, aim at.*

studium, ī, n., *eagerness, zeal, devotion, energy, enthusiasm.*

sub, prep. (1) w. abl., *under, beneath; at the foot of, close by, near to;* (2) w. acc., *under, close up to;* of time, *towards, just before.*

sub-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw off, withdraw; draw up, haul up, beach.*

subductiō, -ōnis, f., *hauling on shore, beaching.*

subitō, adv., *suddenly.*

subitus, a, um, *sudden, hasty.*

sub-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *bring under, subject, expose;* in pass., *lie near.*

sublātus, a, um, from **tollo.**

subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *supply, furnish.*

sub-mittō, ere, mīsī, -missum, *send (to aid), send to one's aid.*

sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, drive off, dislodge.*

sub-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow (closely), follow up, pursue.*

subsidium, ī, n., *aid, assistance; support; reserves, reinforcement.*

sub-sistō, ere, -stitī, *halt; hold.*

sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be near, be close at hand.*

suc-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *succeed, take the place of, relieve,* w. dat.; *come close to; come up.*

successus, ūs, m., *approach, advance.*

suc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down.*

sudis, is, f., *stake.*

Suēbī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebi,* a German tribe on the Rhine.

Suessiōnes, um, m. plur., *the Suessiones,* a tribe in northern Gaul.

suī, sibi, sē or **sēsē**, reflex. pron., *himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them;* **inter se** *(to, with, from,* etc.), *one another.*

sum, esse, fuī, *be, exist;* w. gen., *belong to.*

summa, ae, f., *total sum; chief control, command, management.*

summus, a, um, superlative of **superus**, *highest, topmost, greatest, chief, utmost, supreme, extreme.*

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, undertake; spend, expend.*

superior, ius, comparative of **superus**, *higher, upper; former, previous, preceding; superior, more successful.*

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conquer, defeat, overcome, be victorious; be superior, surpass.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, *remain, survive.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f., *thanksgiving.*

suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc., *above, before.*

suspīcīo, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *suspect.*

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hold out, maintain oneself.*

sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *sustain, withstand, hold out, hold one's own, bear, endure; check, rein in, keep in hand.*

sustulī, from **tollo.**

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their; his own*, etc.; m. plur. as subst., **suī, ōrum**, *his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen;* n. plur. as subst., **sua, ōrum**, *his (their) possessions, property.*

T

T., an abbreviation for **Titus.**

talea, ae, f., *bar, rod.*

tam, adv., *so.*

tamen, adv., *still, however, yet.*

Tamesis, is, m., *the Thames.*

tandem, adv., *at length, at last.*

tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctum, *touch, border on.*

tantulus, a, um, *so trifling, so small.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, so much, such; so powerful; as great, as much;* n. **tantum**, as adv., *so much, so far.*

tardē, adv., *slowly.*

tardō, āre, āvī, ātum, *check.*

Taximagulus, ī, m., a king ruling in Kent.

tegimentum, ī, n., *covering.*

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover, hide, protect.*

tēlum, ī, n., *weapon, missile, dart.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, thoughtlessly, without good reason.*

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* (of chariot).

temperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *control, restrain;* part. as adj., **temperātus, a, um**, *temperate, mild.*

tempestās, -tātis, f., *weather; storm.*

temp-us, -oris, n., *time, season, occasion.*

Tencterī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Tencteri*, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

tendō, ere, tetendī, tēnsum or **tentum**, *stretch, stretch out.*

teneō, ere, uī, tentum, *hold, keep, restrain, detain.*

tergum, ī, n., *back, rear;* **tergum vertere**, *to flee, take to flight;* **post tergum**, *in the rear, behind.*

ternī, ae, a, f., *three at a time, three.*

terra, ae, f., *earth, land; country.*

Terrasidius, ī, m., *Titus Terrasidius*, an officer with Caesar.

territō, āre, *frighten, terrify.*

terror, -ōris, m., *alarm, panic, fright, terror.*

tertius, a, um, *third.*

testūdō, -dinis, f., *tortoise-shell; testudo, shelter of overlapping shields.*

timeō, ēre, uī, *fear, feel* or *have fear, be anxious, be afraid.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, alarm, fright, dread, panic.*

Titūrius, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, ī, m., *Titus*, a Roman praenomen.

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise; take aboard;* w. **ancoram**, *weigh; take away, remove, destroy.*

tormentum, ī, n., *engine (for throwing missiles), artillery.*

tot, indeclinable, *so many.*

totidem, indeclinable, *as many, the same number.*

tōtus, a, um, *whole, entire, all;* often rendered freely by *entirely, altogether.*

trabs, trabis, f., *beam.*

trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hand over, give up, surrender, deliver.*

trā-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead across, bring over, lead.*

trājectus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage.*

tranquillitās, -tātis, f., *stillness, calm.*

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond, on the other side of.*

trān-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *cross over, board.*

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī (**-īvī**), **-itum**, *cross, cross over, come over.*

trāns-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *cross.*

trānsmissus, ūs, m., *passage across.*

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry, lead, bring* or *take over.*

Trānsrhēnānus, a, um, *living across the Rhine* (from Gaul).

Trebius, ī, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.

trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*

trēs, tria, *three.*

Trēverī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Treveri*, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.

tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune* (an officer in the Roman army).

trib-uō, ere, -uī, ūtum, *grant, give, bestow, render.*

trīduum, ī, n., *space of three days, three days.*

triennium, ī, n., *three years.*

trīgintā, *thirty.*

Trinobantes, um, *the Trinobantes*, a tribe in Britain.

tripertītō, adv., *in three divisions.*

tripl-ex, -icis, *triple, threefold.*

triquetrus, a, um, *triangular.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ērī, tūtus (or **tuitus**) **sum**, *protect, guard, defend.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time, thereupon;* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *noise, uproar, commotion, disorder.*

tumulus, ī, m., *mound.*

turma, ae, f., *squadron, troop.*

turris, is, f., *tower.*

U

ubi, adv., *where; when.*

Ubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ubii*, a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.

ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, *punish.*

ūllus, a, um, *any;* as subst., *any one.*

ulterior, ius, comparative, *further, more remote.*

ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond.*

ultrō, adv., *of one's own accord, spontaneously.*

umquam, adv., *ever.*

ūnā, adv., *at the same time, together, along.*

unde, adv., *whence, from which.*

undecimus, a, um, *eleventh.*

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*

ūniversus, a, um, *all, in a body;* as subst., *all together, the whole body.*

ūnus, a, um, *one, a single; alone, only; one and the same.*

urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

urgeō, ēre, ursī, *press hard.*

Usipetes, um, m. plur., *the Usipetes*, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.

usque, adv., *all the way, right* or *quite up to.*

ūsus, a, um, from **utor.**

ūsus, ūs, m., *experience, use, practice; management, handling; advantage, service;* **ex usu**, *of advantage, advantageous.*

ut, or **utī**, *as; that, in order that,* in purpose clauses generally best rendered by infin. w. *to;* w. verbs of fearing, *that not; seeing that.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both;* m. plur., *both sides.*

utī, see **ut.**

ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ, make use of, adopt, avail oneself of, show, display,* w. abl.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacuus, a, um, *empty.*

vadum, ī, n., *ford; shoal, shallow.*

vagor, ārī, ātus sum, *wander, roam about.*

valeō, ēre, uī, *be strong, be powerful, have weight* or *influence.*

vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, wall.*

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum, *lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

vāstus, a, um, *vast, boundless, immense.*

vectīg-al, -ālis, n., *tax, tribute.*

vectōrius, a, um, *for carrying;* **vectorium nāvigium**, *a transport.*

vehementer, adv., *strongly, vigorously, exceedingly.*

Velānius, ī, m., *Quintus Velanius*, one of Caesar's officers.

Veliocasses, um, m. plur., *the Veliocasses*, a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.

Venetī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Venĕti*, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

Veneticus, a, um, *of* or *with the Veneti.*

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *come often, keep coming.*

ventus, ī, m., *wind, breeze.*

vereor, ērī, ītus sum, *fear, be afraid, feel anxiety.*

vergō, ere, *incline, trend, lie, face.*

vērō, *indeed, in fact; but;* often untranslated.

ver-tō, -ere, -tī, -sum, *turn;* **terga vertere**, *to flee, take to flight.*

vestiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *clothe.*

vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *forbid, order not.*

vet-us, -eris, *old.*

vexillum, ī, n., *flag.*

via, ae, f., *way, road, track, route, journey.*

vīcī, from **vinco.**

vīciēs, adv., *twenty times.*

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* in pass., *be seen, seem, appear, seem good* or *seem best.*

vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (one-fourth of the night time).

vīgintī, *twenty.*

vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, defeat, overcome.*

vinculum, ī, n., *chain;* often in plur., *prison.*

vīnea, ae, f., *vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea.*

vīrēs, ium, from **vis.**

vir-gō, -ginis, f., *maiden.*

Viromanduī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Viromandui*, a tribe in northeastern Gaul.

vir-tūs, -tūtis, f., *manliness, valor, bravery, courage, energy.*

vīs, vim, vī, plur. **vīrēs, ium**, f., *force, strength, power; fury, violence; vigor;* plur., *strength, powers.*

vīsus, a, um, from **video.**

vītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid, seek to escape.*

vītrum, ī, n., *woad.*

vīvō, ere, vīxī, victum, *live;* w. abl., *live on.*

vix, adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

vocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, summon, invite.*

volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing, want.*

voluntās, -tātis, *wish, desire; good will.*

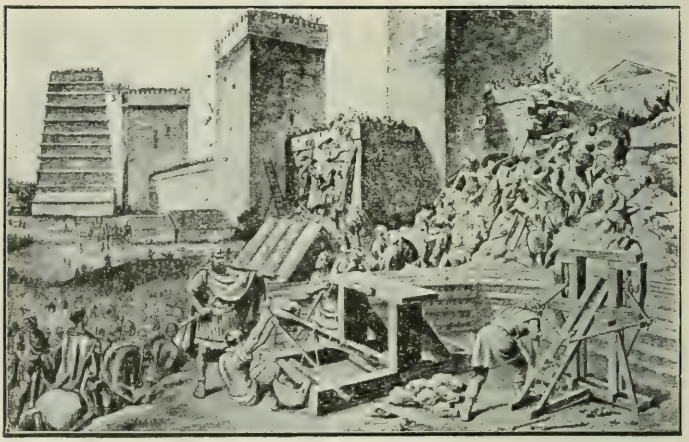
voluptās, -tātis, f., *pleasure.*

Volusēnus, ī, m., *Caius Volusenus*, a military tribune with Caesar.

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, utterance, cry.*

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *wound.*

vuln-us, -eris, n., *wound.*



Attack on a Walled City.

TEST PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION AT SIGHT.

1. Eodem die, ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse ascensum. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere quo hostes ierant ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

iugum—ridge. *habeo*—consider.

2. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agendici, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. Cuius adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno Aulerco, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

supplementum—reinforcements. *nuper*—recently.
Agendicum, *Lutetia*—names of towns.
Parisii—name of a people.

3. Germani, desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit

etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Caius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sed dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemabat, oppugnare parabant. Positis castris a millibus passuum quindecim, auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt.

fidem non faceret, could not gain credence, i.e., could not cause them to believe.

4. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis, dejecti sunt loco: sed intolerantius Gallos insequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus decimae tertiae legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae, ex castris minoribus eductae, cum Tito Sextio legato locum ceperant superiorem. Quibus rebus confectis, Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Gallorum atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est; quod eo oppido recepto, civitatem Batavorum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

intoleranter—eagerly. *excipio*—support.
tardo—check. *redigo*—bring.

5. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis prohibere.

sublatus—elated. *in praesentia*—for the time being.

6. Prima luce, nostris omnibus transportatis, hostes qui in munitionibus erant, magno cum clamore aciem instruunt. Labienus milites cohortatus, ut suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, dat signum proelii; primo concursu ab dextro, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam conjiciuntur: ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium concidissent, tamen reliqui acriter resistebant nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos cohortabantur. At, incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt, impetumque de improviso fecerunt; ita hostes circumventi omnes interfectique sunt.

pristinus—old-time. *concido*—fall.
suspicionem do—show signs. *exitus*—issue.

7. Noviodunum erat oppidum Aeduorum, ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat: huc magnum numerum equorum, huius belli causa in Hispania coemptum, miserat. Sed Galli cum intellexissent Caesarem abesse, exercitum ad oppidum expugnandum miserunt. Itaque interfectis Novioduni custodibus, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt; oppidum, quod ab se teneri non posse iudicabant, ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt; frumentum flumine atque incendio corruperunt; ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidiaque ad ripas Ligeris disponere coeperunt, ut ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere possent.

pecunia—money. *coemo*—buy up.
custos—a guard. *partior*—divide.
corrumpo—destroy.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli, cohortati inter se ne speratam praedam ex manibus

dimitterent, flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Haec fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes trans flumen eliceret, placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in colle quodam collocatis, "Habetis," inquit, "milites, quam petistis facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepe imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec videre existimate." Simul signa ad hostem verti iubet, et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera disponit.

elicio—entice. *petistis* = *petivistis*.
praesto—display. *turma*—squadron.

9. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetorix copias suas, quas pro castris collocaverat, reduxit protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi jussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem deductis duabus legionibus praesidio relictis secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis, altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem milites, Alesiam circumvallare instituit.

protinus—at once. *situs*—situation.

10. Nuntiatur Afranio magnas hostium copias ad flumen constitisse. Ad hos opprimendos cum omni equitatu tribusque legionibus noctu proficiscitur, imprudentesque praemissis equitibus adoritur. Celeriter sese tamen Gallorum equites expediunt, proelioque commisso magnum numerum nostrorum diu sustinuerunt. Sed ubi signa legionum appropinquare coeperunt, armis abiectis se fugae mandant. Reliqui, hac pugna nacti spatium, se in loca superiora recipiunt. Sed, nulla ad explorandum idoneum locum castris data facultate, necessario

procul ab aqua et natura iniquo loco castra ponunt. Qua re animadversa, Afranius proelio non lacessit, et eo die castra munire suos non passus est, quo paratiores essent ad insequendum omnes, si hostes longius progrederentur.

expedio—make ready. *iniquus*—unfavorable.
spatium, that is, *spatium temporis* not *spatium loci*.

(Caesar is besieging a town which Vercingetorix has set out to relieve.)

11. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis qui arma iumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato, arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

conquiro—search for. *claudo*—close.
destringo—draw.

12. Hoc ipso tempore Germani in castra irrumpere conantur. Imprudentes nostri re nova perturbantur ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit: neque quo signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat provident. Alius iam castra capta esse nuntiat, alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse exclamat. Tali timore omnibus perterritis confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivis audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere conantur seque ipsi adhortantur ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

trepidatur, impersonal passive. *deleo*—destroy.

13. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, Pullo et Vorenus, qui de locis summis semper contendebant. Ex his Pullo, cum acerrime pugnaretur, "Quid dubitas," inquit, "Vorene? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit." Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones. Neque Vorenus sese vallo continet sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. In Pullonem hostes universi tela coniciunt, neque dant regrediendi facultatem, impeditumque circumsistunt. Illi Vorenus laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pullone omnis multitudo convertit; illum arbitrantur occisum. Vorenus, dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert auxilium Pullo, atque ambo incolumes sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic alter alteri auxilio salutique erat neque diiudicari poterat, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

existimatio—opinion. *diiudico*—decide.

14. Interim Calenus, cui Caesar negotium dederat reliquas legiones transportandi, militibus in naves impositis, naves solvit paulumque a portu progressus litteras a Caesare accipit, quibus est certior factus portus litoraque omnia classibus Pompeii teneri. Quo cognito se in portum recipit navesque omnes redire jubet. Una ex his, quae imperio Caleni non paruit, quod erat sine militibus, a Bibulo expugnata est, qui de servis liberisque omnibus supplicium sumit et ad unum interficit. Tum Bibulus rediit cum classe ad Oricum, sed milites e classe exponere prohibebatur; praesidiis enim dispositis omnia litora a Caesare tenebantur. Interim Caesar frustra suos, qui in Italia cum Antonio tenebantur, exspectabat. Ad quos arcessendos tandem, cum moras diutius pati non posset, dicitur inter maximam tempestatem furoremque maris navem parvam conscendisse solus.

supplicium sumo de—punish. *mora*—delay.

15. Quibus rebus cognitis, magnum numerum militum in naves imponit et media nocte cohortes sexaginta ad eam partem munitionum ducit, quae pertinebant ad mare longissimeque a

maximis castris Caesaris aberant. Eo statim naves militibus completas mittit; et quid a quoque fieri velit, praecipit. Ad eas munitiones Caesar Marcellinum quaestorem cum legione nona positum habebat. Quarum munitionum haec fuit ratio. Timens Caesar ne nostri circumvenirentur, duplex eo loco fecerat vallum, ut, si ancipiti proelio pugnaretur, posset resisti. Sed operum magnitudo spatium perficiendi non dabat. Itaque contra mare tertium vallum, quod has duas munitiones conjungeret, nondum perfecerat. Quae res per Allobroges Pompeio cognita erat. Ad hunc locum subito prima luce Pompeii milites sunt congressi; simul navibus vecti milites in vallum tela jaciebant, fossasque complebant.

ancipiti—on two sides. *veho*—convey.

16. Itaque consilio convocato, cohortatus est ut ea quae imperasset diligenter industrieque administrarent; et prima confecta vigilia quattuor milia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredi jubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio reli quit : quinque ejusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci jubet. Ipse post paulo egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit quo naves appelli jusserat. Eo cum ventum esset, exploratores hostium, qui omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes (quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas) ab nostris opprimuntur. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati et hostium acies cernebatur.

inopinans—not expecting. *cerno*—see.

17. Mittit primo Brutum adulescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium legatum ; postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adducit. Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus, eo quo Labienum miserat contendit ; cohortes quattuor ex proximo praesidio deducit, equitum partem se sequi, partem circumire exteriores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri jubet. Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis una quadraginta cohortibus,

quas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiorem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proelio intersit.

offero—throw in one's way. *intersum*—take part in.

18. Pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. Conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum desperata salute copias a munitionibus reducunt. Fit statim hac re audita ex castris Gallorum fuga. Quod nisi totius diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. De media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt. Postero die Vercingetorix concilio convocato id bellum se suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causa demonstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, se illis offerre, si Romanis tradere velint. Mittuntur de deditione ad Caesarem legati. Iubet arma tradi, principes produci. Ipse in munitione pro castris considit; eo duces producuntur; Vercingetorix deditur, arma proiciuntur.

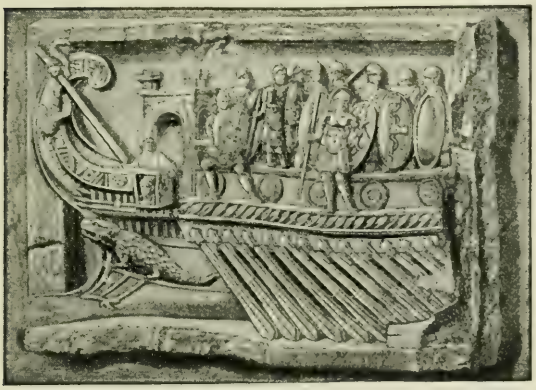
caedes—slaughter. *defessus*—weary.
deleo—destroy. *necessitas*—need, interest.

19. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod Germani auxilia contra se Treveris miserant; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa, neque ab se fidem laesam: petunt atque orant ut sibi parcat, atque si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur.

purgo—excuse. *laedo*—violate.
parco—spare.

20. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime Germani agriculturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, rescindit atque in extremo ponte turrim constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Gaium Volcatium Tullum adulescentem praefecit. Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus est per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet.

studeo—pay attention to.
contingo—touch, border on.
rescindo—destroy.
tollo—take away.
maturesco—ripen.
tueor—defend.



Warship.

LT1001.870.C34D4 1971